A Formal Description of the Incremental Translation of Stage 3 VHDL into State Deltas in SDVS

30 September 1993

Prepared by
I. V. FILIPPENKO
Trusted Computer Systems Department
Computer Science and Technology Subdivision
Computer Systems Division
Engineering and Technology Group

Prepared for
DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE
Ft. George G. Meade, MD 20744-6000

Engineering and Technology Group

APPROVED FOR PUBLIC RELEASE;
DISTRIBUTION IS UNLIMITED
A FORMAL DESCRIPTION OF THE INCREMENTAL TRANSLATION OF STAGE 3 VHDL INTO STATE DELTAS IN SDVS

Prepared by

I. V. FILIPPENKO
Trusted Computer Systems Department
Computer Science and Technology Subdivision
Computer Systems Division
Engineering and Technology Group

30 September 1993

Engineering and Technology Group
THE AEROSPACE CORPORATION
El Segundo, CA 90245-4691

Prepared for

DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE
Ft. George G. Meade, MD 20744-6000

APPROVED FOR PUBLIC RELEASE:
DISTRIBUTION IS UNLIMITED
A FORMAL DESCRIPTION OF THE INCREMENTAL TRANSLATION
OF STAGE 3 VHDL INTO STATE DELTAS IN SDVS

Prepared

I. V. Filippenko

B. H. Levy, Principal Investigator
Computer Assurance Section

Approved

D. B. Baker, Director
Trusted Computer Systems Department

Carl A. Sunshine, Principal Director
Computer Science and Technology Subdivision
Abstract

This report documents a formal semantic specification of Stage 3 VHDL, a subset of the VHSIC Hardware Description Language (VHDL), via translation into the temporal logic of the State Delta Verification System (SDVS). Stage 3 VHDL is the fourth of successively more sophisticated VHDL subsets to be interfaced to SDVS.

The specification is a continuation-style denotational semantics of Stage 3 VHDL in terms of state deltas, the distinguishing logical formulas used by SDVS to describe state transitions. The semantics is basically specified in two phases. The first phase performs static semantic analysis, including type checking and other static error checking, and collects an environment for use by the second phase. The second phase performs the actual translation of the subject Stage 3 VHDL description into state deltas. An abstract syntax tree transformation is interposed between the two translation phases.

The translator specification was, for the most part, written in DL, the semantic metalanguage of a denotational semantics specification system called DENOTE. DENOTE enables the semantic equations of the specification to be realized both as a printable representation (included in this report) and an executable Common Lisp program that constitutes the translator's implementation. However, the second phase semantics of the VHDL simulation cycle has a direct operational implementation in the VHDL translator code.
Acknowledgments

The author thanks his colleagues in the Computer Assurance Section for their support in the adaptation of SDVS to VHDL, and particularly to Tim Aiken, Jeff Cook, Beth Levy, Leo Marcus, and Dave Martin for their contributions to the formal semantic definition described in this report.
Contents

Abstract v

Acknowledgments vi

1 Introduction 1

2 History of Our Semantic Approach to VHDL 5

3 Overview of Stage 3 VHDL 7
   3.1 General Remarks ......................................... 7
   3.2 Stage 3 VHDL Language Summary ....................... 8

4 Preliminaries 11
   4.1 Environments ........................................... 11
   4.2 Continuations ........................................... 14
   4.3 Other Notation and Functions .......................... 14

5 Syntax of Stage 3 VHDL 17
   5.1 Syntactic Domains ..................................... 18
   5.2 Syntax Equations ...................................... 18
      5.2.1 Concrete Syntax ................................... 18
      5.2.2 Abstract Syntax: Phase 1 ......................... 31
      5.2.3 Abstract Syntax: Phase 2 ......................... 35

6 Phase 1: Static Semantic Analysis and Environment Collection 37
   6.1 Overview ............................................. 37
   6.2 Descriptors, Types, and Type Modes .................. 38
      6.2.1 Type and type descriptor predicates ................ 43
      6.2.2 Additional primitive accessors and predicates .......... 45
   6.3 Special-Purpose Environment Components and Functions ....... 47
   6.4 Phase 1 Semantic Domains and Functions ............... 48
      6.4.1 Phase 1 Semantic Domains ......................... 49
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6.4.2</td>
<td>Phase 1 Semantic Functions</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5</td>
<td>Phase 1 Semantic Equations</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5.1</td>
<td>Stage 3 VHDL Design Files</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5.2</td>
<td>Entity Declarations</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5.3</td>
<td>Architecture Bodies</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5.4</td>
<td>Port Declarations</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5.5</td>
<td>Declarations</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5.6</td>
<td>Concurrent Statements</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5.7</td>
<td>Sensitivity Lists</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5.8</td>
<td>Sequential Statements</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5.9</td>
<td>Case Alternatives</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5.10</td>
<td>Discrete Ranges</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5.11</td>
<td>Waveforms and Transactions</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5.12</td>
<td>Expressions</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5.13</td>
<td>Primitive Semantic Equations</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Interphase Abstract Syntax Tree Transformation</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1</td>
<td>Interphase Semantic Functions</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.2</td>
<td>Transformed Abstract Syntax of Names</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3</td>
<td>Interphase Semantic Equations</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.1</td>
<td>Stage 3 VHDL Design Files</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.2</td>
<td>Entity Declarations</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.3</td>
<td>Architecture Bodies</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.4</td>
<td>Port Declarations</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.5</td>
<td>Declarations</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.6</td>
<td>Concurrent Statements</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.7</td>
<td>Sensitivity Lists</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.8</td>
<td>Sequential Statements</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.9</td>
<td>Case Alternatives</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.10</td>
<td>Discrete Ranges</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.11</td>
<td>Waveforms and Transactions</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7 Interphase Abstract Syntax Tree Transformation
8 Phase 2: State Delta Generation

8.1 Phase 2 Semantic Domains and Functions ............................................. 105
  8.1.1 Phase 2 Semantic Domains ......................................................... 106
  8.1.2 Phase 2 Semantic Functions ..................................................... 107

8.2 Phase 2 Execution State ................................................................. 109
  8.2.1 Unique Name Qualification ......................................................... 109
  8.2.2 Universe Structure for Unique Dynamic Naming .............................. 109
  8.2.3 Execution Stack ............................................................................ 112

8.3 Special Functions .............................................................................. 114
  8.3.1 Operational Semantic Functions .................................................... 114
  8.3.2 Constructing State Deltas ............................................................. 115
  8.3.3 Error Reporting ............................................................................. 116

8.4 Phase 2 Semantic Equations ............................................................. 117
  8.4.1 Stage 3 VHDL Design Files ........................................................... 117
  8.4.2 Entity Declarations ...................................................................... 122
  8.4.3 Architecture Bodies ...................................................................... 122
  8.4.4 Declarations .................................................................................. 123
  8.4.5 Concurrent Statements ................................................................. 141
  8.4.6 Sequential Statements ................................................................... 142
  8.4.7 Waveforms and Transactions ......................................................... 161
  8.4.8 Expressions .................................................................................. 162
  8.4.9 Expression Types .......................................................................... 166
  8.4.10 Primitive Semantic Equations ..................................................... 168

9 Conclusion .......................................................................................... 169

References ............................................................................................ 171
1 Introduction

The State Delta Verification System (SDVS), under development over the course of several years at The Aerospace Corporation, is an automated verification system that aids in writing and checking proofs that a computer program or (design of a) digital device satisfies a formal specification.

The long-term goal of the SDVS project is to create a production-quality verification system that is useful at all levels of the hierarchy of digital computer systems; our aim is to verify hardware from gate-level designs to high-level architecture, and to verify software from the microcode level to application programs written in high-level programming languages. We are currently extending the applicability of SDVS to both lower levels of hardware design and higher levels of computer programs. A technical overview of the system is provided by [1] and [2], while detailed information on the system may be found in [3] and [4].

Several features distinguish SDVS from other verification systems (refer to [5] for a detailed discussion). The underlying temporal logic of SDVS, called the state delta logic, has a formal model-theoretic semantics. SDVS is equipped with a theorem prover that runs in interactive or batch modes; the user supplies high-level proof commands, while many low-level proof steps are executed automatically. One of the more distinctive features of SDVS is its flexibility — there is a well-defined and relatively straightforward method of adapting the system to arbitrary application languages (to date: ISPS, Ada, and VHDL). Furthermore, descriptions in the application languages potentially serve as either specifications or implementations in the verification paradigm. Incorporation of a given application language is accomplished by translation to the state delta logic via a Common Lisp translator program, which is (generally) automatically derived from a formal denotational semantics for the application language.

Prior to 1987 we adapted SDVS to handle a subset of the hardware description language ISPS. However, ISPS has serious limitations regarding the specification of hardware at levels other than the register transfer level. In fiscal year 1988 we documented a study of some of the hardware verification research being conducted outside Aerospace and investigated VHDL (VHSIC Hardware Description Language), an IEEE and DoD standard hardware description language released in December 1987. We selected VHDL as a possible medium for hardware description within SDVS.

The aim of the ongoing formal hardware verification effort in SDVS is to verify hardware descriptions written in VHDL. This choice of hardware description language is particularly well-suited to our overall aim of verifying hardware designs across the spectrum from gate-level designs to high-level architectures. Indeed, the primary hardware abstraction in VHDL, the design entity, represents any portion of a hardware design that has well-defined inputs and outputs and performs a well-defined function. As such, "a design entity may represent an entire system, a sub-system, a board, a chip, a macro-cell, a logic gate, or any level of abstraction in between" [6].

Prerequisites for adapting SDVS to VHDL are (1) to define VHDL semantics formally in terms of SDVS's underlying logic (the state delta logic) and (2) to implement a translator from VHDL to the state delta logic. As with the incorporation of Ada into SDVS [7], the
approach taken with VHDL has been to implement increasingly complex language subsets; this has enabled a graded, structured approach to hardware verification.

In fiscal year 1989 we defined an initial subset of VHDL, called Core VHDL, that captured the most essential behavioral features of VHDL, including: ENTITY declarations; ARCHITECTURE bodies; CONSTANT, VARIABLE, SIGNAL, and PORT declarations; predefined types BOOLEAN, BIT, BIT_VECTOR, and INTEGER; variable and signal assignment statements; IF, CASE, WAIT, and NULL statements; and concurrent PROCESS statements. We defined both the concrete syntax and the abstract syntax for Core VHDL, formally specified its semantics and, on the basis of this semantic definition, implemented a Core-VHDL-to-state-delta translator [8].

In fiscal year 1990, SDVS was enhanced to provide the capability of verifying hardware descriptions written in Core VHDL [9, 10]. In fiscal year 1991, the translator underwent extensive revision to accommodate a second VHDL subset, Stage 1 VHDL [11], which included: WAIT statements in arbitrary contexts; LOOP, WHILE, and EXIT statements; TRANSPORT delay; aggregate signal assignments; and a revised translator structure.

Implemented in fiscal year 1992, Stage 2 VHDL provided a considerably more complex and capable VHDL language subset. Stage 2 VHDL extended Stage 1 VHDL with the addition of the following VHDL language features: (restricted) design files, declarative parts in entity declarations, package STANDARD (containing predefined types BOOLEAN, BIT, INTEGER, TIME, CHARACTER, REAL, STRING, and BIT_VECTOR), user-defined packages, USE clauses, array type declarations, enumeration types, subprograms (procedures and functions, excluding parameters of object class SIGNAL), concurrent signal assignment statements, FOR loops, octal and hexadecimal representations of bitstrings, default object class SIGNAL for ports, and general expressions of type TIME in AFTER clauses.

The VHDL language subset implemented in fiscal year 1993, Stage 3 VHDL, extends Stage 2 VHDL with the addition of subtypes of scalar types, integer type definitions, and type conversions between integer types. Furthermore, the SDVS user can now set “statement marks” (in the form of interpreted comments) for sequential statements. Finally, a facility for specifying, proving, and invoking the behavior of a VHDL subprogram — VHDL offline characterization — has been implemented [3]. The SDVS VHDL and Ada translators have been reengineered to a uniform implementation reflecting language similarities where these exist, and optimized for greater space- and time-efficiency.

As far as immediate plans are concerned, the scope of VHDL descriptions amenable to SDVS, as well as the specifications that could be proved about them, will be significantly broadened by (1) enhancing the SDVS Simplifier with support for reasoning about symbolic representations of VHDL time, and (2) augmenting the SDVS proof language with a command for induction over VHDL simulation cycles (or adapting the existing induct command for that purpose).

The purpose of the present report is to provide a formal description of the translation of Stage 3 VHDL hardware descriptions into state deltas. This amounts to a formal semantic specification of Stage 3 VHDL, presented herein as a continuation-style denotational semantics [12] for which the state delta language provides the semantic domain. The translation basically consists of parsing followed by two semantic analysis phases.
The first phase receives the abstract syntax tree generated by the Stage 3 VHDL parser for a given hardware description, and:

- performs static semantic analysis, including type checking;
- collects an environment that associates all names declared in the subject Stage 3 VHDL hardware description with their attributes;
- appropriately disambiguates identical names declared in different scopes, as required by the static block structure of the hardware description; and
- for the convenience of the second phase, transforms the abstract syntax tree of the subject hardware description.

Phase 2 receives the transformed abstract syntax tree and the environment constructed by Phase 1, and uses these to translate the Stage 3 VHDL hardware description into state deltas. This translation is incremental, in the sense that it is driven by symbolic execution of the hardware description, producing further state deltas as symbolic execution proceeds.

The Stage 3 VHDL formal description is an extensive revision and expansion of the formal specifications of the Core VHDL, Stage 1 VHDL, and Stage 2 VHDL translators [8, 11, 13]. The Stage 3 VHDL translator specification was written in DL, the semantic metalanguage of a denotational semantics specification system called DENOTE [14]. DENOTE enables the semantic equations of the specification to be automatically translated into both a printable representation (included in this report) and an executable Common Lisp program that constitutes the translator's implementation.

This report is organized as follows.

- Our approach to the semantics of Stage 3 VHDL is discussed in Section 2.
- Section 3 contains an overview of the Stage 3 VHDL subset.
- Section 4 provides preliminary information (background and notation) on the particular method of semantic description used.
- Section 5 lists both the concrete and abstract syntax of Stage 3 VHDL.
- Section 6 presents the Stage 3 VHDL static semantics.
- Section 7 presents the interphase abstract syntax tree transformation.
- Section 8 presents the Stage 3 VHDL dynamic semantics in terms of state deltas.
- Finally, some concluding remarks are made in Section 9.
2 History of Our Semantic Approach to VHDL

The VHDL translator essentially functions as a simulator kernel, maintaining a clock and a list of future events that are defined as state deltas. For Core VHDL (fiscal years 1989 and 1990), the translator transformed possibly multiple Core VHDL statements: sequential statements between \texttt{WAIT} statements within a process were all translated and then \textit{composed} into a single state delta. The translator updated the clock to the next time at which a signal driver became active or a process resumed. As the clock advanced, the translator \textit{merged} the composite state deltas into a single state delta that specified the behavior of all processes at that point in the execution.

For Stage 1 VHDL (fiscal year 1991), we re-evaluated the feasibility of using composition in the translation of VHDL to state deltas, and concluded that although composition had initially seemed viable in the case of Core VHDL, it is \textit{impossible in principle} to apply the technique to more complex VHDL subsets, as the attempt would require the ability to compose over sections of VHDL code that would necessitate static proof in SDVS. More generally, the ability to compose over arbitrary \texttt{WAIT}-bracketed code in \texttt{PROCESS} statements would be tantamount to the automatic construction of correctness proofs without user intervention — a theoretically undecidable problem.

Therefore, we abandoned composition for Stage 1 VHDL and subsequent SDVS VHDL subsets. Instead, within a given execution (simulation) cycle, processes are translated sequentially, in the order in which they appear in the VHDL description, and the user has control over stepping through the sequential statements within each process. Thus, rather than trying to have the VHDL translator model the concurrency of the processes, we choose to take for granted a certain “meta-theorem” about VHDL: that any two sequentializations of the processes are equivalent. A brief justification for this point of view is that the problem of mutual exclusion is not a concern in VHDL, since

- all variables are local to the process in which they are declared, and
- distinct processes modify distinct drivers of a given signal (known as a resolved signal), and the ultimate signal value is obtained by application of a user-defined \textit{resolution function}.\footnote{As of Stage 3 VHDL, however, resolved signals are still disallowed.}

A gratifying benefit of the revised translation strategy is that the understandability of the resulting proofs has been remarkably improved — the dynamic flow of process execution precisely reflects the simulation semantics of VHDL (as defined in the \textit{VHDL Language Reference Manual} [6]), but with the crucial aspect of symbolic execution (use of abstract values rather than concrete) thrown in. The current Stage 3 VHDL translator thus functions as a “symbolic simulator,” with the effect of being reasonably intuitive as a proof engine.
3 Overview of Stage 3 VHDL

Stage 3 VHDL comprises a relatively powerful behavioral subset of VHDL. That is to say, Stage 3 VHDL descriptions are confined to the specification of hardware behavior or data flow, rather than structure. More comprehensive VHDL subsets for SDVS will include constructs for the structural description of hardware in terms of its hierarchical decomposition into connected subcomponents; this enhancement may be implemented in Stage 4 VHDL.

3.1 General Remarks

The primary VHDL abstraction for modeling a digital device is the design entity. A design entity consists of two parts: an entity declaration, providing an external view of the component by declaring the input and output ports, and an architecture body, giving an internal view in terms of component behavior or structure.

In Stage 3 VHDL, each architecture body is constrained to be behavioral, consisting of a set of declarations and concurrent statements defining the functional interpretation of the device being modeled. The allowable concurrent statements are of two kinds: PROCESS statements and concurrent signal assignment statements, to be discussed below.

A PROCESS statement, the most fundamental kind of behavioral concurrent statement in VHDL, is a block of sequential zero-time statements that execute sequentially but “instantaneously” in zero time [15], and some (possibly none) distinguished sequential WAIT statements whose purpose is to suspend process execution and allow time to elapse.

A process typically schedules future values to appear on data holders called signals, by means of sequential signal assignment statements. The execution of a signal assignment statement does not immediately update the value of the target signal (the signal assigned to); rather, it updates the target signal’s associated driver signal by placing (at least one) new transaction, or time-value pair, on the waveform that is the list of such transactions contained in the driver. Each transaction projects that the signal will assume the indicated value at the indicated time; the time is computed as the sum of the current clock time of the model and the delay specified (explicitly or implicitly) by the signal assignment statement.

Two types of time delay can be specified by a sequential signal assignment statement, and Stage 3 VHDL encompasses both. Inertial delay, the default, models a target signal’s inertia that must be overcome in order for the signal to change value; that is, the scheduled new value must persist for at least the time period specified by the delay in order actually to be attained by the target signal. Transport delay, on the other hand, must be explicitly indicated in the signal assignment statement with the reserved word TRANSPORT, and models a “wire delay” wherein any pulse of whatever duration is propagated to the target signal after the specified delay.

In lieu of explicit WAITs, a process may have a sensitivity list of signals that activate process resumption upon receiving a distinct new value (an event). The sensitivity list implicitly inserts a WAIT statement as the last statement of the process body.
The other class of concurrent statement in Stage 3 VHDL is that of *concurrent signal assignment* statements. These always represent equivalent PROCESS statements, and come in two varieties: *conditional signal assignment* and *selected signal assignment*. A conditional signal assignment is equivalent to a process with an embedded IF statement whose branches are sequential signal assignments; similarly, a selected signal assignment is equivalent to a process with an embedded (possibly degenerate) CASE statement whose branches are sequential signal assignments. The VHDL translator syntactically transforms concurrent signal assignment statements to their corresponding PROCESS statements prior to translation into state deltas.

Signals act as data pathways between processes. Each process applies operations to values being passed through the design entity. We may regard a process as a program implementing an algorithm, and a Stage 3 VHDL description as a collection of independent programs running in parallel.

In full VHDL, a target signal can be assigned to in multiple processes, with a separate driver for updating by each process; the value taken on by the signal at any particular time is then computed by a user-defined *resolution function* of these drivers. As did previous SDVS VHDL subsets, Stage 3 VHDL disallows such *resolved signals*: a signal is not permitted to appear as the target of a sequential signal assignment statement in more than one process body; equivalently, every signal has a unique driver. Resolved signals and their resolution functions will be implemented in a future version of SDVS.

The Stage 3 VHDL data types are: BOOLEAN, BIT, UNIVERSAL.INTEGER, INTEGER, REAL (preliminary version), TIME (a predefined physical type of INTEGER range), CHARACTER, STRING (arrays of characters), BIT_VECTOR (arrays of bits), user-defined enumeration types, user-defined *array types*, subtypes of scalar types, and *integer type definitions*. Furthermore, explicit *type conversions* between integer types are allowed. The preliminary implementation allows VHDL descriptions involving type REAL to be parsed and translated, but provides no support for reasoning about floating point numbers.

### 3.2 Stage 3 VHDL Language Summary

Concrete and abstract syntaxes for Stage 3 VHDL have been defined — see Section 5 — as required, of course, for the implementation of the Stage 3 VHDL translator. The following is a convenient synopsis of the Stage 3 VHDL language subset.

- VHDL design files
  - entity declarations, architecture bodies
  - *restriction*: unique entity and architecture per file

- package STANDARD
  - predefined types:
    - BOOLEAN, BIT, UNIVERSAL.INTEGER, INTEGER, TIME, CHARACTER, REAL, STRING, BIT_VECTOR
  - various units of type TIME: FS, PS, NS, US, MS, SEC, MIN, HR
- restriction: the implementation of type REAL is preliminary

- user-defined packages
  - package declarations
  - package bodies

- USE clauses for accessing packages
  - restriction: packages must be used in their entirety

- entity declarations
  - entity header: port declarations
  - entity declarative part: other declarations

- architecture bodies

- object declarations
  - CONSTANT, VARIABLE, SIGNAL
  - octal and hexadecimal representations of bitstrings
  - default object class SIGNAL for entity ports

- array type declarations
  - arrays of arbitrary element type
  - bidirectional arrays, unconstrained arrays

- user-defined enumeration types

- subtypes of scalar types

- integer type definitions

- type conversion

- signals of arbitrary types

- subprograms
  - procedures and functions: declarations and bodies
  - restriction: excluding parameters of object class SIGNAL

- concurrent statements
  - PROCESS statements
  - conditional signal assignments
  - selected signal assignments

- sequential statements
- null statement: NULL
- variable assignments (scalar & composite)
- signal assignments (scalar & composite, inertial or TRANSPORT delay)
- conditionals: IF, CASE
- loops: LOOP, WHILE, FOR
- loop exits: EXIT
- subprogram calls
- subprogram return: RETURN
- process suspension: WAIT

• operators

- numeric unary operators: ABS, +, -
- numeric binary operators: +, -, *, /, ** (exponentiation),
  MOD (modulo), REM (remainder)
- boolean and bit operators: NOT, AND, NAND, OR, NOR, XOR
- relational operators: =, /=, <, <=, >, and >=
- array concatenation operator: &
- restriction: =, /=, and & are the only Stage 3 VHDL operators defined for composite types (i.e., BIT VECTOR and user-defined array types).
4 Preliminaries

The purpose of this section is to provide some of the background and notation necessary for the research documented in this report. It is assumed that the reader is familiar with

- the descriptive aspects of the denotational technique for expressing the semantics of programming languages (including concepts such as syntax, semantic functions, lambda notation, curried function notation, environments, and continuations) as presented in [12]; and

- the theory and practice of state deltas [3, 16, 17].

Denotational semantic definitions of programming languages consist of two parts: syntax and semantics. The syntax part consists of domain equations (equivalent to productions of a context-free grammar) that define the syntactic variables (analogous to grammar nonterminals) and the (abstract) syntactic elements of the language. The semantic part defines a semantic function for each syntactic variable and the definition (by syntactic cases) of these functions; it also defines auxiliary functions that are used in the definition of the semantic functions. The semantic functions constitute a syntax-directed mapping from the syntactic constructs of the language to their corresponding semantics.

Certain principal notions, among which are environments and continuations, are central to standard denotational semantic definitions of programming languages.

4.1 Environments

Environments are functions from identifiers to their "definitions"; these definitions are called denotable values. Identifiers that have no corresponding definition are formally bound to the special token *UNBOUND*. The identifiers are names for objects (e.g., constants, variables, procedures, and exceptions) in a program written in the language being defined. Environments are usually created and modified by the elaboration of declarations in the language.

The domain of environments, Env, is typically

\[
\text{Env} = \text{Id} \rightarrow (\text{Dv} + *\text{UNBOUND}*)
\]

where Id and Dv are, respectively, the domains of identifiers and denotable values. If \( r \) is an environment, then \( r(id) \) is the value (*UNBOUND* or a Dv-value) bound to the identifier id. The empty environment \( r0 \) is the environment in which \( r0(id) = *\text{UNBOUND} \) for every identifier id. In definitions of languages that have block-structured scoping, it is necessary to combine two environments that may each associate a denotable value with the same identifier. If \( r1 \) and \( r2 \) are environments, then \( r1[r2] \) is a combined environment defined by

\[
\text{r1[r2](id)} = (\text{r2(id)} = *\text{UNBOUND} \rightarrow \text{r1(id)}, \text{r2(id)})
\]

where \((a \rightarrow b,c)\) is an abbreviation for \( \text{if a then b else c} \). That is, in \( r1[r2] \), the \( r2 \)-value of an identifier "overrides" the \( r1 \)-value of that same identifier, except when its \( r2 \)-value is
*UNBOUND*. An environment can be changed by this means. If \( r \) is an environment, \( d \) a value, and \( id \) an identifier, then \( r[d/id] \) denotes an environment that is the same as \( r \) except that \( (r[d/id])(id) = d \).

Tree-Structured Environments

When the use of the above combination of environments is inconvenient or inappropriate, it is sometimes necessary to use a structured collection of environments. A tree-structured environment (TSE) is a tree whose nodes are environments and whose edges are labeled by identifiers or numerals, called edge labels, where no two edges emanating from a given node can have the same label. A path is a list of zero or more edge labels. Such a path denotes a sequence of connected edges from the root node to another node of a tree-structured environment. A path \( p \) can be extended by an edge labeled \( elbl \) via \( %p(elbl) \), where

\[
%p(id) = \text{append}(p, id)
\]

Formally, a TSE can be regarded as a partial function from paths to environments. Thus the set of paths in a TSE \( t \) is precisely the set of paths \( p \) for which \( t(p) \) is defined. If \( t \) is a TSE and \( p \) is a path in \( t \), then \( t(p) \) denotes the unique environment in \( t \) located at the end of \( p \).

If \( t \) is a TSE and \( p \) is one of its paths, the pair \( (t, p) \) can be used to represent the set of environments containing all of the identifier bindings visible at a given point in a Stage 3 VHDL hardware description, where the identifiers in \( p \) are the names of the lexical scopes whose local environments are on the path \( p \). At the program point whose identifier bindings are represented by \( (t, (elbl_1, \ldots, elbl_n)) \), \( t((elbl_1, \ldots, elbl_n)) \) is the most local set of bindings, \( \ldots \), and \( t(\epsilon) \) is the most global set of bindings, where \( \epsilon \) denotes the empty path. Thus \( t(p)(id) \) is the value bound to \( id \) in the most local environment of \( (t, p) \).

Qualified Names

The same identifier is bound in every component environment of a TSE, although many (if not most) of those bindings may be to *UNBOUND*. It is convenient to be able to distinguish uniquely an occurrence of an identifier by prefixing to the identifier a representation of the path that designates the location in the TSE of the environment associated with that instance. Such a uniquely distinguished identifier will be called a fully qualified name. Thus if \( t \) is a TSE, \( p \) one of its paths, and \( id \) an identifier, then \( $p(id) \) is \( id \)'s fully qualified name relative to \( t(p) \). If \( p = (elbl_1, \ldots, elbl_n) \), then \( $p(id) \) is represented as \( elbl_1.elbl_2. \ldots.elbl_n.id \). When \( p = \epsilon \) (empty path), \( $\epsilon(id) \) is simply represented by \( id \). \$ is defined by

\[
$\text{path}(id) = (\text{path} = \epsilon \rightarrow \text{id}, $\text{rest(path)})(\text{catenate(last(path),"","id}))
\]

The function \text{rest} returns a list consisting of the first \( n - 1 \) elements of an \( n \)-element list, and \text{catenate} is a curried function that concatenates its (variable number of) arguments into an atom.

Identifiers qualified with the full TSE path that locates their associated component environment are cumbersome and hard to read. If only those instances of identifiers not bound to *UNBOUND* are of interest, then such full name qualification may be unnecessary.
Often a *suffix* of this path is sufficient to distinguish uniquely an instance of such an identifier. An identifier so qualified is said to be *uniquely qualified*. In the limit, if all identifiers not bound to *UNBOUND* were distinct, then no qualification (an empty suffix) would be necessary to distinguish them. Given a TSE, it is possible to determine the minimum path suffix necessary to distinguish uniquely each identifier instance; this is done in our implementation of Stage 3 VHDL.

**Descriptors**

The denotable values to which identifiers are bound in the component environments of a TSE are called *descriptors*.

A descriptor contains several fields of information, each of which holds an *attribute* of the identifier instance to which the descriptor is bound in a given TSE component environment. The number of fields in a descriptor depends on the attributes of its associated identifier, but each descriptor always has fields that contain the identifier to which it is bound, the identifier instance's *statically uniquely qualified name* (see Section 8.2.1), and a tag that identifies the kind of descriptor (and hence its remaining fields).

Descriptors for Stage 3 VHDL are discussed in detail in Section 6.2.

**Tree-Structured Environment Access**

Certain non-*UNBOUND* (i.e., denotable) values of an identifier id in (t,p) can be accessed by the functions *lookup* and *lookup-local*. These functions are given later in the context of semantic equations in which they are used.

**Tree-Structured Environment Modification**

A TSE's component environments can be modified (in particular, descriptors can be bound to unbound identifiers or existing descriptors can be modified) via a function built into DENOTE. This function, *enter*, is used extensively in the DENOTE description of the Stage 3 VHDL translator. *enter*(t)(p)(id)(d), where t is a TSE, p a path in t, id an identifier, and d a *partial* descriptor (containing all its fields except the identifier field), yields a TSE that is the same as t except that its component environment t(p) is replaced by the environment

\[ t(p)[d' \setminus id], \text{ where if } d = \langle qid, \text{tag}, \ldots \rangle, \text{ then } d' = \langle id, qid, \text{tag}, \ldots \rangle. \]

**Tree-Structured Environment Extension**

One can add additional component environments to a TSE by *extending* it. If t is a TSE, p a path in t, and elbl an edge label, and if \%(p)(elbl) is *not* a path in t, then

\[ \text{extend}(t)(p)(elbl) \]

denotes the TSE that is the same as t except that

\[ (\text{extend}(t)(p)(elbl))(%(p)(elbl)) = r0. \]

Thus one can extend t along one of its paths p by adding a legally labeled edge onto the end of p and placing a node that is the empty environment r0 at the end of that extended path %(p)(elbl).
4.2 Continuations

Continuations are a technical device for capturing the semantics of transfers of control, whether they be explicit (gotos, returns from procedures and functions) or implicit (normal sequential flow of control to the next program element, abnormal termination of program execution). Continuations are functions intended to map the "normal" result of a semantic function to some ultimate "final answer" [some final value(s) or an error message]. If the semantic function does not produce a normal result, its continuation can be ignored and some "abnormal" final answer (such as an error message) can be produced instead.

For example, in the first phase of our formal description of the Stage 3 VHDL translator, a continuation supplied to a semantic function that elaborates declarations normally maps a new "translation state" to a final answer, but if a declaration illegally duplicates or conflicts with an existing definition, then the continuation is ignored and an error message (such asDUPLICATE-DECLARATION) is the resulting final answer.

The initiation of the second phase of our formal description of the Stage 3 VHDL translator assumes that the program has first "passed" the first phase without error. In fact, the second phase is used as the continuation for the first.

4.3 Other Notation and Functions

Fairly standard lambda notation (see [12]) is used in this report, except that structured arguments are permitted in lambda-abstractions. Lambda-abstractions normally have the form \( \lambda x. \text{body} \), where \( \text{body} \) is a lambda-term and \( x \) may be free in \( \text{body} \). The term \( \lambda x.\lambda y. \text{body} \) is printed as \( \lambda x,y. \text{body} \). If \( x \) is, for example, a pair, then the components of \( x \) can be represented in \( \text{body} \) by the application of projection functions to \( x \). Instead, the individual components of \( x \) can be bound to variables \( y \) and \( z \) that appear free in \( \text{body} \) (instead of projection functions applied to \( x \)) by using the abstraction \( \lambda (y,z). \text{body} \). This is defined if and only if the value of \( x \) is indeed a pair. This notation will be used only when its result is defined.

A list is represented in the usual way: \( (x,y,z) \). Standard Lisp functions are used, but they are curried, as in \( \text{cons}(x)(y) \) and \( \text{append}(x)(y) \). If \( x \) is a nonempty sequence (list), then \( \text{hd}(x) \) denotes its first element and \( \text{tl}(x) \) the sequence (list) of its remaining components; \( x = \text{cons}(\text{hd}(x))(\text{tl}(x)) \).

Some general-purpose functions are second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth, and last, which return the second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth, and last elements, respectively, of a list. Additionally, we have rest, which returns a list consisting of the first \( n - 1 \) elements of an \( n \)-element list, and length, which returns the integer length of a list.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{second}(x) & = \text{hd}(\text{tl}(x)) \\
\text{third}(x) & = \text{hd}(\text{tl}(\text{tl}(x))) \\
\text{fourth}(x) & = \text{hd}(\text{tl}(\text{tl}(\text{tl}(x)))) \\
\text{fifth}(x) & = \text{hd}(\text{tl}(\text{tl}(\text{tl}(\text{tl}(x)))))
\end{align*}
\]
sixth(x) = hd(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(x))))))

last(id⁺) = (null(tl(id⁺)) → hd(id⁺), last(tl(id⁺)))

rest(id⁺) = (null(tl(id⁺)) → ε, cons(hd(id⁺), rest(tl(id⁺))))

length(x) = (null(x) → 0, 1+length(tl(x)))
5 Syntax of Stage 3 VHDL

Three Stage 3 VHDL syntaxes are used by the translator: a concrete syntax, which is SLR(1) and is used for parsing Stage 3 VHDL hardware descriptions; and two abstract syntaxes, which are used, respectively, in Phases 1 and 2 of the semantic definition. The concrete syntax is intended to be the “reference” grammar for the Stage 3 VHDL language subset.

In all three syntaxes the syntactic constructs are the members of syntactic domains, which are of two kinds: primitive and compound. The primitive syntactic domains are given. The compound syntactic domains are functions of the primitive domains; these functional dependencies are expressed as a set of syntax equations represented as productions of a context-free grammar. Terminals and nonterminals of this grammar range, respectively, over the primitive and compound syntactic domains. Only those syntactic domains of the abstract syntax that actually appear in a semantic equation will be given explicit names; other syntactic domains will be unnamed, as these names are not used in the specification.

The terminal classes are: identifiers, unsigned decimal numerals, bit literals, character literals, bitstrings (binary, octal, and hexadecimal), and strings. The remaining terminal symbols serve as reserved words.

The concrete syntax of Stage 3 VHDL, being SLR(1), is unambiguous. The abstract syntaxes are considerably smaller than the concrete syntax, because they are not concerned with providing a parsable representation of Stage 3 VHDL, but rather simply provide the minimum syntactic information necessary for a syntax-directed semantic specification. Their use yields a more compact formal definition.

The translation of a hardware description (from concrete syntax) to its abstract syntax representation is accomplished by semantic action routines in the Stage 3 VHDL parser. This process is straightforward, and a formal specification of how the Phase 1 abstract syntax is derived from the concrete syntax is omitted from this report. It is felt that the correspondence between the concrete and Phase 1 syntaxes is so close that no such formal specification is needed. The derivation of Phase 2 syntactic objects from corresponding Phase 1 syntactic objects is explicit in the specification of the interphase abstract syntax tree transformation; see Section 7.

There are some minor variations between the concrete and abstract syntaxes of Stage 3 VHDL. For example, in the concrete syntax, labels for PROCESS statements and loops (LOOP, WHILE, FOR statements) are optional. It was found, however, that the semantics of Stage 3 VHDL requires that every process and loop have a label. Thus in the abstract syntaxes (which drive the semantics), process and loop labels are required. This is enforced by having the parser and the constructor of the Phase 1 abstract syntax tree supply a distinct system-generated label for each unnamed process and loop. These labels are taken from a primitive syntactic domain SysId of system-generated identifiers, disjoints from the primitive syntactic domain Id of identifiers. Similarly, anonymous array types are given distinct system-generated names.

The following subsections present the syntactic domains and equations for Stage 3 VHDL.
5.1 Syntactic Domains

Primitive Syntactic Domains

\begin{align*}
id &: \text{Id} & \text{identifiers} \\
\text{SysId} &: \text{BitLit} & \text{system-generated identifiers (disjoint from Id)} \\
\text{bit} &: \text{NumLit} & \text{bit literals} \\
\text{constant} &: \text{CharLit} & \text{numeric literals (unsigned decimal numerals)} \\
\text{char} &: \text{BitStr} & \text{character literals} \\
\text{bitstring, octstring, hexstring} &: \text{BitStr} & \text{bitstring literals} \\
\text{string} &: \text{Str} & \text{string literals} \\
\end{align*}

Compound Syntactic Domains

\begin{align*}
\text{design-file} &: \text{Design} & \text{design files} \\
\text{ent-decl} &: \text{Ent} & \text{entity specifications} \\
\text{arch-body} &: \text{Arch} & \text{architecture body specifications} \\
\text{port-decl} &: \text{PDec} & \text{port declarations} \\
\text{decl, pkg-decl, pkg-body, use-clause} &: \text{Dec} & \text{declarations} \\
\text{con-stat} &: \text{CStat} & \text{concurrent statements} \\
\text{seq-stat} &: \text{SStat} & \text{sequential statements} \\
\text{case-alt} &: \text{Alt} & \text{case alternatives} \\
\text{discrete-range} &: \text{Drg} & \text{discrete ranges} \\
\text{waveform} &: \text{Wave} & \text{waveforms} \\
\text{transaction} &: \text{Trans} & \text{transactions} \\
\text{expr} &: \text{Expr} & \text{expressions} \\
\text{ref} &: \text{Ref} & \text{references} \\
\text{unary-op} &: \text{Uop} & \text{unary operators} \\
\text{binary-op} &: \text{Bop} & \text{binary operators} \\
\text{relational-op} &: \text{Bop} & \text{relational operators} \\
\end{align*}

5.2 Syntax Equations

In Sections 5.2.1, 5.2.2, and 5.2.3 we present, respectively, the concrete syntax for Stage 3 VHDL hardware descriptions admissible as input to the SDVS VHDL language parser, the syntax of VHDL abstract parse trees generated by the parser for use by Phase 1 of the VHDL translator, and the syntax of transformed parse trees produced during Phase 1 for use by translator Phase 2.

5.2.1 Concrete Syntax

The concrete syntax for Stage 3 VHDL is shown below.

The productions are numbered for reference purposes. The first production and the nonterminal **start** are inserted by the SLR(1) grammar analyzer to facilitate SLR(1) parsing,
and the (terminal) symbol `*E*` denotes the beginning or end of a file. Terminal symbols appear in uppercase letters, while nonterminal symbols and pseudo-terminals (terminals denoting a set of values) are in lowercase; pseudo-terminals are prefixed by a "dot" (.).

**STAGE 3 VHDL CONCRETE SYNTAX**

1 **start**
   ::= *E* design-file *E*

2 design-file
   ::= DESIGN_FILE .id IS init pkg-decl-list pkg-body-list
          use-clause-list entity-declaration architecture-body

3 init
   ::= 

4 pkg-decl-list
   ::= 

5   | pkg-decl-list pkg-decl

6 pkg-decl
   ::= PACKAGE .id IS pkg-decl-part END opt-id ;

7 pkg-decl-part
   ::= pkg-decl-item-list

8 pkg-decl-item-list
   ::= 

9   | pkg-decl-item-list pkg-decl-item

10 pkg-decl-item
    ::= const-decl
11   | sig-decl
12   | type-decl
13   | subtype-decl
14   | subprog-decl
15   | use-clause

16 opt-id
    ::= 
17   | .id

18 pkg-body-list
    ::= 
19   | pkg-body pkg-body-list

20 pkg-body
    ::= PACKAGE BODY .id IS pkg-body-decl-part END opt-id ;

21 pkg-body-decl-part
    ::= pkg-body-decl-item-list

22 pkg-body-decl-item-list
    ::= 
23   | pkg-body-decl-item-list pkg-body-decl-item
24 pkg-body-decl-item
   ::= const-decl
   | type-decl
   | subtype-decl
   | subprog-decl
   | subprog-body
   | use-clause

30 use-clause-list
   ::= use-clause-list use-clause

32 use-clause
   ::= USE dotted-name-list ;

33 dotted-name-list
   ::= dotted-name
   | dotted-name-list , dotted-name

35 dotted-name
   ::= .id
   | dotted-name . .id

37 entity-declaration
   ::= ENTITY .id IS ent-header END opt-id ;
   | ENTITY .id IS ent-header ent-decl-part END opt-id ;

39 ent-header
   ::= opt-port-clause

40 opt-port-clause
   ::= port-clause

42 ent-decl-part
   ::= ent-decl-item-list

43 ent-decl-item-list
   ::= ent-decl-item
   | ent-decl-item-list ent-decl-item

45 ent-decl-item
   ::= const-decl
   | sig-decl
   | type-decl
   | subtype-decl
   | subprog-decl
   | subprog-body
   | use-clause

52 architecture-body
   ::= ARCHITECTURE .id UF .id IS arch-decl-part BEGIN
      arch-stat-part END opt-id ;

53 arch-decl-part
   ::= arch-decl-item-list
54 arch-decl-item-list
   ::= arch-decl-item-list arch-decl-item
55
56 arch-decl-item
   ::= const-decl
57   | sig-decl
58   | type-decl
59   | subtype-decl
60   | subprog-decl
61   | subprog-body
62   | use-clause
63
64 arch-stat-part
   ::= con-stats
65
66 port-clause
   ::= PORT ( port-list ) ;
67
68 port-list
   ::= interface-list
69
70 interface-list
   ::= interface-sig-decl
71   | interface-list ; interface-sig-decl
72
73 interface-sig-decl
   ::= opt-signal id-list : opt-mode type-mark opt-init
74   | opt-signal id-list : opt-mode slice-name opt-init
75
76 opt-signal
   ::= SIGNAL
77
78 id-list
   ::= .id
79   | id-list , .id
80
81 opt-mode
   ::= mode
82
83 mode
   ::= IN
84   | OUT
85   | INOUT
86   | BUFFER
87
88 type-mark
   ::= dotted-name
89
90 slice-name
   ::= type-mark ( discrete-range )
91
92 discrete-range
   ::= range
83 range
   ::= simple-expr direction simple-expr

84 direction
   ::= TO
     | DOWNTO

86 opt-init
   ::= 
     | := expr

88 const-decl
   ::= CONSTANT id-list : type-mark := expr ;
     | CONSTANT id-list : slice-name := expr ;

90 var-decl
   ::= VARIABLE id-list : type-mark opt-init ;
     | VARIABLE id-list : slice-name opt-init ;

92 sig-decl
   ::= SIGNAL id-list : type-mark opt-init ;
     | SIGNAL id-list : slice-name opt-init ;

94 type-decl
   ::= enum-type-decl
     | array-type-decl
     | integer-type-decl

97 enum-type-decl
   ::= TYPE .id IS enum-type-def ;

98 enum-type-def
   ::= ( id-list )
     | ( char-list )

100 char-list
   ::= character-literal
     | char-list , character-literal

102 array-type-decl
   ::= TYPE .id IS array-type-def ;

103 array-type-def
   ::= ARRAY ( discrete-range ) OF type-mark

104 integer-type-decl
   ::= TYPE .id IS RANGE discrete-range ;

105 subtype-decl
   ::= SUBTYPE .id IS type-mark opt-constraint ;

106 opt-constraint
   ::= 
     | constraint

108 constraint
::= range-constraint

109 range-constraint
  ::= RANGE discrete-range

110 subprog-decl
  ::= subprog-spec ;

111 subprog-spec
  ::= PROCEDURE .id opt-procedure-formal-part
  112    | FUNCTION .id opt-function-formal-part RETURN type-mark

113 opt-procedure-formal-part
  ::= ( procedure-par-spec-list )

114 opt-function-formal-part
  ::= ( function-par-spec-list )

115 procedure-par-spec-list
  ::= procedure-par-spec
  116    | procedure-par-spec-list ; procedure-par-spec

117 function-par-spec-list
  ::= function-par-spec
  118    | function-par-spec-list ; function-par-spec

119 procedure-par-spec
  ::= proc-object-class id-list : procedure-par-mode
  120    | type-mark opt-expr
  121    | id-list : IN type-mark opt-expr
  122    | id-list : OUT type-mark opt-expr
  123    | id-list : INOUT type-mark opt-expr

124 function-par-spec
  ::= fn-object-class id-list : function-par-mode type-mark
  125    | opt-expr

126 proc-object-class
  ::= CONSTANT
  127    | VARIABLE

128 fn-object-class
  ::= CONSTANT
  129

130 procedure-par-mode
  ::= IN
  131    | OUT
  132    | INOUT

133 function-par-mode
  ::= IN
  134
136 subprog-body
   ::= subprog-spec IS subprog-decl-part BEGIN
      subprog-stat-part END opt-id ;

137 subprog-decl-part
   ::= subprog-decl-item-list

138 subprog-decl-item-list
   ::= subprog-decl-item-list subprog-decl-item

139 subprog-decl-item
   ::= const-decl
   | var-decl
   | type-decl
   | subtype-decl
   | subprog-decl
   | subprog-body
   | use-clause

140 subprog-stat-part
   ::= seq-stats

141 con-stats
   ::= con-stats con-stat

142 con-stat
   ::= process-stat
   | concurrent-sig-assn-stat

143 process-stat
   ::= opt-unit-label PROCESS process-decl-part BEGIN
      process-stat-part END PROCESS opt-id ;

144 | opt-unit-label PROCESS ( sensitivity-list )
   process-decl-part BEGIN process-stat-part END PROCESS
   opt-id ;

145 opt-unit-label
   ::= .id :

146 process-decl-part
   ::= process-decl-item-list

147 process-decl-item-list
   ::= process-decl-item-list process-decl-item

148 process-decl-item
   ::= const-decl
   | var-decl
   | type-decl
   | subtype-decl
   | subprog-decl
   | subprog-body
   | use-clause
process-stat-part
::= seq-stats

concurrent-sig-assn-stat
::= selected-sig-assn-stat
| conditional-sig-assn-stat

selected-sig-assn-stat
::= opt-unit-label WITH expr SELECT
target <= opt-transport selected-waveforms ;
| .atmark
opt-unit-label WITH expr SELECT
target <= opt-transport selected-waveforms ;

opt-transport
::=
| TRANSPORT

selected-waveforms
::= selected-waveform
| selected-waveforms , selected-waveform

selected-waveform
::= waveform WHEN choices

conditional-sig-assn-stat
::= target <= opt-transport conditional-waveforms waveform ;
| .atmark
target <= opt-transport conditional-waveforms waveform ;
| .id : target <= opt-transport conditional-waveforms waveform ;
| .atmark
.id : target <= opt-transport conditional-waveforms waveform ;

conditional-waveforms
::=
| conditional-waveforms conditional-waveform

conditional-waveform
::= waveform WHEN expr ELSE

waveform
::= waveform-elt-list

waveform-elt-list
::= waveform-elt
| waveform-elt-list , waveform-elt

waveform-elt
::= expr
| expr AFTER expr

seq-stats
::=
| seq-stats seq-stat

seq-stat

25
null-stat
  ::= NULL ;
  | .atmark NULL

var-assn-stat
  ::= name : expr ;
  | .atmark name : expr ;

sig-assn-stat
  ::= target <= opt-transport waveform ;
  | .atmark target <= opt-transport waveform ;

if-stat
  ::= if-head if-tail
  | .atmark if-head if-tail

if-head
  ::= IF expr THEN seq-stats
  | if-head ELSIF expr THEN seq-stats

if-tail
  ::= END IF ;
  | ELSE seq-stats END IF ;

case-stat
  ::= CASE expr IS case-alt-list END CASE ;
  | .atmark CASE expr IS case-alt-list END CASE ;

case-alt-list
  ::= case-alt
  | case-other-alt
  | case-alt case-alt-list

case-alt
  ::= WHEN choices => seq-stats

case-other-alt
  ::= WHEN OTHERS => seq-stats

choices
  ::= choice
  | choices | choice

choice
  ::= simple-expr
  | discrete-range
loop-stat ::= simple-loop
   | while-loop
   | for-loop

simple-loop ::= opt-unit-label LOOP seq-stats END LOOP opt-id ;
   | .atmark opt-unit-label LOOP seq-stats END LOOP opt-id ;

while-loop ::= opt-unit-label WHILE expr LOOP seq-stats END LOOP opt-id ;
   | .atmark opt-unit-label WHILE expr LOOP seq-stats END LOOP opt-id ;

for-loop ::= opt-unit-label FOR name IN discrete-range LOOP seq-stats END LOOP opt-id ;
   | .atmark opt-unit-label FOR name IN discrete-range LOOP seq-stats END LOOP opt-id ;

exit-stat ::= EXIT opt-dotted-name opt-when-cond ;
   | .atmark EXIT opt-dotted-name opt-when-cond ;

opt-dotted-name ::= dotted-name

opt-when-cond ::= WHEN expr

proc-call-stat ::= name ;
   | .atmark name ;

return-stat ::= RETURN ;
   | .atmark RETURN ;
   | RETURN expr ;
   | .atmark RETURN expr ;

wait-stat ::= WAIT opt-sensitivity-clause opt-condition-clause opt-timeout-clause ;
   | .atmark WAIT opt-sensitivity-clause opt-condition-clause opt-timeout-clause ;

opt-sensitivity-clause ::= sensitivity-clause
   | sensitivity-clause

sensitivity-clause ::= ON sensitivity-list
sensitivity-list
::= name-list

name-list
::= name
    | name-list , name

opt-condition-clause
::=
    | condition-clause

c-condition-clause
::= UNTIL expr

opt-timeout-clause
::=
    | timeout-clause

timeout-clause
::= FOR expr

expr-list
::= expr
    | expr-list , expr

opt-expr
::=
    | expr

expr
::= rel
    | rel and-expr
    | rel nand-expr
    | rel or-expr
    | rel nor-expr
    | rel xor-expr

rel
::= simple-expr
    | simple-expr relop simple-expr

and-expr
::= and-part
    | and-part and-expr

and-part
::= AND rel

nand-expr
::= nand-part
    | nand-part nand-expr

nand-part
::= NAND rel

or-expr
::= or-part  
    | or-part or-exp

277 or-part  
    ::= OR rel

278 nor-exp   
    ::= nor-part  
    | nor-part nor-exp

280 nor-part  
    ::= NOR rel

281 xor-exp  
    ::= xor-part  
    | xor-part xor-exp

283 xor-part  
    ::= XOR rel

284 simple-exp 
    ::= simple-exp1  
    | + simple-exp1  
    | - simple-exp1

286 simple-exp1 
    ::= term  
    | simple-exp1 addop term

288 term  
    ::= factor  
    | term mulop factor

290 factor  
    ::= primary  
    | primary ** primary  
    | ABS primary  
    | NOT primary

293 primary  
    ::= primary1  
    | aggregate  
    | ( expr )

296 primary1  
    ::= literal  
    | .atmark  
    | name

299 literal  
    ::= boolean-literal  
    | bit-literal  
    | character-literal  
    | numeric-literal  
    | time-literal  
    | bitstring-literal  
    | string-literal
309 boolean-literal
   ::= FALSE
310     | TRUE
311 bit-literal
   ::= .bit
312 character-literal
   ::= .char
313 numeric-literal
   ::= .constant
314 time-literal
   ::= opt-time-constant time-unit
315 opt-time-constant
   ::= 
316     | .constant
317 time-unit
   ::= FS
318     | PS
319     | NS
320     | US
321     | MS
322     | SEC
323     | MIN
324     | HR
325 bitstring-literal
   ::= .bitstring
326     | .octstring
327     | .hexstring
328 string-literal
   ::= .string
329 aggregate
   ::= ( 2-expr-list )
330 2-expr-list
   ::= expr , expr
331     | 2-expr-list , expr
332 target
   ::= name
333 name
   ::= name1
334 name1
   ::= selector
335     | name1 . selector
336     | name1 ( expr-list )
5.2.2 Abstract Syntax: Phase 1

The abstract syntax of Stage 3 VHDL used during Phase 1 translation is shown below.

The superscript "*" denotes Kleene closure (e.g. "decl*" denotes zero or more occurrences of the syntactic object "decl"), and a superscript "+" denotes one or more occurrences. In a syntactic clause, subscripts denote (possibly) different objects of the same class.

As in the concrete syntax, terminal symbols appear in upper case, while all other symbols are either nonterminals or pseudo-terminals (id, bitlit, and constant).

STAGE 3 VHDL ABSTRACT SYNTAX: PHASE 1

design-file ::= DESIGN-FILE id pkg-decl* pkg-body* use-clause* ent-decl arch-body

pkg-decl ::= PACKAGE id decl* opt-id

dkg-body ::= PACKAGEBODY id decl* opt-id

use-clause ::= USE dotted-name+

dotted-name ::= id+

ent-decl ::= ENTITY id port-decl* decl* opt-id

arch-body ::= ARCHITECTURE id1 id2 decl* con-stat* opt-id

port-decl ::= DEC PORT id+ mode type-mark opt-expr

| SLCDEC PORT id+ mode slice-name opt-expr

31
mode ::= IN | OUT | INOUT | BUFFER

type-mark ::= dotted-name

slice-name ::= type-mark discrete-range

discrete-range ::= direction expr₁ expr₂

direction ::= TO | DOWNTO

arch-body ::= ARCHITECTURE id₁ id₂ decl* con-stat* opt-id

decl ::= object-decl
   | type-decl
   | subtype-decl
   | pkg-decl
   | pkg-body
   | subprog-decl
   | subprog-body
   | use-clause

object-decl ::= DEC object-class id⁺ type-mark opt-expr
   | SLCDEC object-class id⁺ slice-name opt-expr

object-class ::= CONST | VAR | SIG

type-decl ::= enum-type-decl
   | array-type-decl
   | integer-type-decl

enum-type-decl ::= ETDEC id id⁺

array-type-decl ::= ATDEC id discrete-range type-mark

integer-type-decl ::= ITDEC id discrete-range

subtype-decl ::= STDEC id type-mark opt-discrete-range

subprog-decl ::= subprog-spec

subprog-spec ::= Procedure id proc-par-spec* type-mark
   | FUNCTION id func-par-spec* type-mark

proc-par-spec ::= object-class id⁺ proc-par-mode type-mark opt-expr
func-par-spec ::= object-class id⁺ func-par-mode type-mark opt-expr
proc-par-mode ::= IN | OUT | INOUT
func-par-mode ::= IN

subprog-body ::= SUBPROGBODY subprog-spec decl* seq-stat* opt-id

con-stat ::= process-stat
    | selected-sig-assn-stat
    | conditional-sig-assn-stat

process-stat ::= PROCESS id ref* decl* seq-stat* opt-id

selected-sig-assn-stat ::= SEL-SIGASSN delay-type id expr ref selected-waveform+
selected-waveform ::= SEL-WAVE waveform discrete-range+

conditional-sig-assn-stat ::= COND-SIGASSN delay-type id ref cond-waveform* waveform
cond-waveform ::= COND-WAVE waveform expr

seq-stat ::= null-stat
    | var-assn-stat
    | sig-assn-stat
    | if-stat
    | case-stat
    | loop-stat
    | while-stat
    | for-stat
    | exit-stat
    | call-stat
    | return-stat
    | wait-stat

null-stat ::= NULL

var-assn-stat ::= VARASSN ref expr

sig-assn-stat ::= SIGASSN delay-type ref waveform

delay-type ::= INERTIAL | TRANSPORT

waveform ::= WAVE transaction+
transaction ::= TRANS expr opt-expr

if-stat ::= IF cond-part+ else-part
cond-part ::= expr seq-stat*
else-part ::= seq-stat*

case-stat ::= CASE expr case-alt+
case-alt ::= CASECHOICE discrete-range\( ^+ \) seq-stat* \\
   | CASEOTHERS seq-stat* \\

loop-stat ::= LOOP id seq-stat* opt-id \\

while-stat ::= WHILE id expr seq-stat* opt-id \\

for-stat ::= FOR id ref discrete-range seq-stat* opt-id \\

exit-stat ::= EXIT opt-dotted-name opt-expr \\

call-stat ::= CALL ref \\

return-stat ::= RETURN opt-expr \\

wait-stat ::= WAIT ref* opt-expr\(_1\) opt-expr\(_2\) \\

expr ::= c \\
   | bool-lit \\
   | bit-lit \\
   | num-lit \\
   | time-lit \\
   | char-lit \\
   | bitstr-lit \\
   | str-lit \\
   | ref \\
   | positional-aggregate \\
   | unary-op expr \\
   | binary-op expr\(_1\) expr\(_2\) \\
   | relational-op expr\(_1\) expr\(_2\) \\

bool-lit ::= FALSE | TRUE \\

bit-lit ::= BIT bitlit \\

num-lit ::= NUM constant \\

time-lit ::= TIME constant time-unit \\

char-lit ::= CHAR constant \\

bitstr-lit ::= BITSTR bit-lit* \\

str-lit ::= STR char-lit* \\

ref ::= REF name
name ::= id
    | name id
    | name expr^*

positional-aggregate ::= PAGGR expr^*

unary-op ::= NOT | PLUS | NEG | ABS

binary-op ::= AND | NAND | OR | NOR | XOR
    | ADD | SUB | MUL | DIV | MOD | REM | EXP
    | CONCAT

relational-op ::= EQ | NE | LT | LE | GT | GE

time-unit ::= FS | PS | NS | US | MS | SEC | MIN | HR

opt-id ::= ε | id

opt-discrete-range ::= ε | discrete-range

opt-dotted-name ::= ε | dotted-name

opt-expr ::= ε | expr

5.2.3 Abstract Syntax: Phase 2

The abstract syntax of Stage 3 VHDL used during Phase 2 translation differs in certain respects from that employed by Phase 1, at exactly those points indicated below.

The abstract syntax transformation occurs at the very end of Phase 1, and just prior to the invocation of Phase 2, as described in Section 7.

The most significant transformations of Phase 1 syntax to that of Phase 2 are: (1) the “desugaring” (i.e., reduction to more basic constructs) of concurrent signal assignment statements (conditional signal assignment and selected signal assignment) into equivalent PROCESS statements; and (2) the disambiguation of REFS into simple references, array references, record field accesses (not fully supported by Stage 3 VHDL), and subprogram calls.

STAGE 3 VHDL ABSTRACT SYNTAX: PHASE 2

ent-decl ::= ENTITY id decl^1_1 decl^1_2 opt-id phase1-hook

con-stat ::= process-stat
process-stat ::= PROCESS id decl* seq-stat* opt-id phase1-hook

expr ::= ε
     | bool-lit
     | bit-lit
     | num-lit
     | time-lit
     | char-lit
     | enum-lit
     | bitstr-lit
     | str-lit
     | ref
     | positional-aggregate
     | type-conversion
     | unary-op expr
     | binary-op expr₁ expr₂
     | relational-op expr₁ expr₂

time-lit ::= TIME constant FS

enum-lit ::= ENUMLIT id

ref ::= REF modifier⁺

modifier ::= SREF id⁺ id
     | INDEX expr
     | SELECTOR id
     | PARLIST expr⁺

type-conversion ::= TYPECONV expr type-mark

unary-op ::= NOT | BNOT | PLUS | NEG | ABS | RNEG | RABS

binary-op ::= AND | NAND | OR | NOR | XOR
     | BAND | BNOT | BOR | BNOR | BXOR
     | ADD | SUB | MUL | DIV | MOD | REM | EXP
     | RPLUS | RMINUS | RTIMES | RDIV | REXPT
     | CONCAT

relational-op ::= EQ | NE | LT | LE | GT | GE
     | RLT | RLE | RGT | RGE

The occurrences of phase1-hook in the Phase 2 abstract syntax for ent-decl and process-stat point to the Phase 1 abstract syntax for the respective constructs, for the purposes of the SDVS VHDL Symbolic Execution Trace Window.
6 Phase 1: Static Semantic Analysis and Environment Collection

Now that the necessary background has been established, we are ready to examine the formal description of the Stage 3 VHDL translator.

In this section, an overview of Phase 1 and its relation to Phase 2 will be presented, followed by detailed discussions of the environment manipulated by the translator and the Phase 1 semantic domains and function types, and finally the Phase 1 semantic equations themselves.

6.1 Overview

A Stage 3 VHDL hardware description is first parsed according to the Stage 3 VHDL concrete grammar, producing an abstract syntax tree that serves as the input to Phase 1 translation.

Phase 1 of the translation accomplishes the following.

- Performs static semantic checks to verify that certain conditions are met, including:
  - Objects, subprograms, packages, and process and loop labels must be declared prior to use.
  - Identifiers with the same name cannot be declared in the same local context.
  - References to objects and labels must be proper, e.g. scalar objects must not be indexed, array references must have the correct number of indices, and EXIT statements must reference a loop label.
  - All components of statements and expressions must have the proper type, e.g. expressions used as conditions must be boolean, array indices must be of the proper type, operators must receive operands of the correct type, procedure and function calls must receive actual parameters of the proper type, function calls must return a result of a type appropriate for their use in an expression.
  - Sensitivity lists in PROCESS and WAIT statements must contain signal identifiers.
  - The collection of discrete ranges defining a CASE statement alternative must be exhaustive and mutually exclusive.
  - The time delays in the AFTER clause of a signal assignment statement must be increasing.

- Creates a new abstract syntax tree — a transformed version of the original abstract syntax tree (used by Phase 1) — that will be more conveniently utilized by Phase 2 of the translation.

- Creates and manipulates a tree-structured environment (TSE) that, in the absence of errors, is provided to Phase 2 of the translation.
If the VHDL translator completes Phase 1 without error, then it can proceed with Phase 2, *state delta generation*. Phase 2 requires two inputs: the transformed abstract syntax tree and the tree-structured environment for the hardware description, both constructed by Phase 1.

The tree-structured environment contains a complete record of the name/attribute associations corresponding to the hardware description's declarations, and its structure reflects that of the description. Referring to this TSE, Phase 2 incrementally generates and (per user proof commands) applies state deltas via symbolic execution and the theories built into the Simplifier.

### 6.2 Descriptors, Types, and Type Modes

When a declaration of an identifier is processed by Phase 1, that identifier is bound in the TSE to a *descriptor*, a structured object that contains the attributes of the identifier instance associated to it by that declaration.

At the time a descriptor is created and entered into the TSE, its *qid* field is set to $\epsilon$. The value of the *qid* field is eventually set to the proper *statically uniquely qualified name (SUQN)*, when such a qualified name makes sense; see Section 8.2.1. These updates to the *qid* fields become possible only once the TSE is fully constructed, i.e., at the very end of Phase 1 — or in other words, at the very beginning of Phase 2, the phase in which these uniquely qualified names are needed.

Eight kinds of descriptor are used in Phase 1: *object*, *package*, *process name*, *loop name*, *function*, *procedure*, *enumeration type element*, and *type*. Their structures are as follows:

**object**:

$$< \text{id, qid, tag, path, exported, type, value, process} >$$

The *id* field contains the identifier to which this descriptor is bound, and the *qid* field contains its statically uniquely qualified name (SUQN). The *tag* field contains *OBJECT*$. The *path* field contains the path in the tree-structured environment to the component environment in which this instance of the identifier is bound. The *exported* field indicates whether the definition of this identifier instance can be exported to other environments. A value *true* (represented by DENOTE symbol *tt*) indicates exportation is permitted, and a value *false* (represented by DENOTE symbol *ff*) indicates that it is not. This becomes an issue when the declaration whose elaboration created this descriptor was contained in a package specification (exportable) or package body (not exportable).

If the identifier *id* represents a constant initialized via a *static* expression, then the *value* field contains the initial value; otherwise it contains *UNDEF* (undefined). Array and record references never represent static values in VHDL, so the *value* field of corresponding object descriptors contains *UNDEF*.

If the identifier *id* represents a signal, then the label of the first *PROCESS* statement in which *id* is the target of a signal assignment is entered into the *process* field, to enable the detection of assignments to the signal by multiple processes (disallowed in Stage 3 VHDL).
Finally, the object descriptor's type field contains the type of the identifier, represented by a pair <tmode, tdesc>:

- tmode is the type mode, itself a pair;
  normally,
  
  \text{tmode} = \langle \text{object-class, ref-mode} \rangle,

where \text{object-class} \in \{\text{CONST, VAR, SIG}\}
and \text{ref-mode} \in \{\text{VAL, REF, OUT}\}.

The tmode indicates, first, whether the object is a constant (\text{object-class} = \text{CONST}), variable (\text{object-class} = \text{VAR}), or signal (\text{object-class} = \text{SIG}),
and second, whether the object is read-only (\text{ref-mode} = \text{VAL}), read-write (\text{ref-mode} = \text{REF}), or write-only (\text{ref-mode} = \text{OUT}).

For technical purposes, it is also occasionally convenient for Phase 1 translation to manipulate "dummy" type modes of the form <DUMMY, VAL>, <DUMMY, OBJ>, <DUMMY, ACC>, <DUMMY, AGR>, and <DUMMY, TYP>, as well as "path" type modes of the form <PATH, p> where p is a path in the TSE.

- tdesc is the type descriptor (see below). It gives the object's basic type, irrespective of the type mode.

To introduce a bit more terminology, a type in which the ref-mode is REF or OUT will be called a reference type, while one whose ref-mode is VAL will be called a value type. A reference type indicates that the associated object can have its value altered (by an assignment, say), as opposed to a value type.

Finally, the type descriptor d = tdesc is the basic type of the type <tmode, tdesc> of which it is the second component.

\text{package :}

\langle \text{id, qid, } \star \text{PACKAGE}\star, \text{path, exported, pbbody} \rangle

The id, qid, path, and exported fields are as above. The tag field contains \star \text{PACKAGE}\star. If this package has a body, the pbbody field contains the transformed abstract syntax tree of the package body; otherwise it contains ε.

\text{process name :}

\langle \text{id, qid, } \star \text{PROCESSNAME}\star, \text{path} \rangle

The id and path fields are as above. The tag field contains \star \text{PROCESSNAME}\star (the process label). The qid field has no relevance here, and contains ε.

\text{loop name :}

\langle \text{id, qid, } \star \text{LOOPNAME}\star, \text{path} \rangle

The id, qid, and path fields are as in a process name. The tag field contains \star \text{LOOPNAME}\star (the loop label).

\text{function :}

\langle \text{id, qid, } \star \text{FUNCTION}\star, \text{path, exported, signatures, body, characterizations} \rangle

The id, qid, exported, and path fields are as above. The tag field contains \star \text{FUNCTION}\star.
The **signatures** field contains a list of signatures, that is, `<pars, rtype>` pairs; this list will be a singleton unless the function is overloaded. The **pars** field of a signature is a list that indicates the names and types of the function’s formal parameters. Each list element is a pair, whose first component is the identifier that denotes the formal parameter’s name and whose second component is its type. The **rtype** (result type) field of a signature contains the type of the function’s result for these particular parameter types; this type is always a **value type**.

The **body** field of a function descriptor contains the transformed abstract syntax tree of the function’s body (including its local declarations) if a body exists, and `ε` otherwise. The **characterizations** field of a function descriptor always contains `ε` (see procedure descriptors for a description of this field).

**procedure** :

```
< id, qid, *PROCEDURE*, path, exported, signatures, body, characterizations >
```

The **id**, **qid**, **path**, **exported**, **signatures**, **body**, and **characterizations** fields are as in the function descriptor. The **tag** field contains `*PROCEDURE*` (procedure). Since procedures return no result, all **rtype** fields in each **signature** contain the **void** standard value type (see below).

The **characterizations** field of a procedure descriptor, unlike that of a function descriptor, is potentially nonempty. One of either the **body** or the **characterizations** must contain `ε`; either a procedure has a body that may be symbolically executed, or it has been characterized by a set of state deltas.

A characterization is a 6-tuple containing the following information:

- the path to the procedure;
- the identifier that names the procedure;
- a list of the identifiers that name the arguments to the procedure;
- a (possibly empty) precondition that determines under which conditions this characterization may be used;
- a modification list of the names of variables changed by this procedure; and
- a postcondition that states the effects of the procedure.

The last three items in the tuple must be given in SDVS internal state delta notation, as they form the basis for a state delta that characterizes the actions of the procedure.

**enumeration type element** :

```
< id, qid, *ENUMELT*, path, exported, type >
```

The **id** field contains the name of an enumeration type element, the **tag** field is `*ENUMELT*`, and the **type** field contains the descriptor of the enumeration type.

**type** :

There are six kinds of type descriptor: those for **standard types**, **enumeration types**, **array types**, **subtypes**, **integer definition types**, and **record types**. Although record
types are not actually incorporated in the Stage 3 VHDL language subset, the Stage 3 VHDL translator contains support for their eventual implementation.

Each type descriptor has an id field (containing the name of that type), a corresponding qid field, a tag field (indicating the kind of type descriptor), path and exported fields (that serve the usual purpose), and additional fields that contain information appropriate to the type represented by the descriptor. The detailed structures of the type descriptors are as follows:

standard type:
  < id, qid, tag, path, exported >

Standard types are those considered to be predeclared; they are always exportable. In Stage 3 VHDL, the standard types are boolean, bit, integer, real, time, character, bit_vector, and string; they cannot be redeclared.

The id and tag fields denote the following Stage 3 VHDL standard types:

id = BOOLEAN,             tag = *BOOL*
id = BIT,                 tag = *BIT*
id = UNIVERSAL_INTEGER,   tag = *INT*
id = INTEGER,             tag = *INT*
id = REAL,                tag = *REAL*
id = TIME,                tag = *TIME*
id = BIT_VECTOR,          tag = *ARRAYTYPE*
id = STRING,              tag = *ARRAYTYPE*

For completeness, we also provide void and polymorphic standard types for Stage 3 VHDL:

id = VOID,                tag = *VOID*
id = POLY,                tag = *POLY*

Functions are available that look up the type descriptors for the standard types; during translation Phase 1, these type descriptors are bound to the type identifiers in the t((STANDARD)) component environment of the TSE t:

bool-type-desc(t) = t((STANDARD ))(BOOLEAN )
bit-type-desc(t) = t((STANDARD ))(BIT )
univint-type-desc(t) = t((STANDARD ))(UNIVERSAL_INTEGER )
int-type-desc(t) = t((STANDARD ))(INTEGER )

41
real-type-desc(t) = t((STANDARD )|REAL )
time-type-desc(t) = t((STANDARD )|TIME )
void-type-desc(t) = t((STANDARD )|VOID )
poly-type-desc(t) = t((STANDARD )|POLY )

In each of the above cases, the type descriptor has the form:
< id, epsilon, tag, (STANDARD), tt, lb, ub >

char-type-desc(t) = t((STANDARD )|CHARACTER )
The type descriptor for the CHARACTER type has the form:
< CHARACTER, epsilon, *ENUMTYPE*, (STANDARD), tt, (CHAR 0), (CHAR 127), literals >

bitvector-type-desc(t) = t((STANDARD )|BIT_VECTOR )
The type descriptor for the BIT_VECTOR type has the form:
< BIT_VECTOR, epsilon, *ARRAYTYPE*, (STANDARD), tt, TO, (NUM 0), epsilon, bittypedesc >

string-type-desc(t) = t((STANDARD )|STRING )
The type descriptor for the STRING type has the form:
< STRING, epsilon, *ARRAYTYPE*, (STANDARD), tt, TO, (NUM 1), epsilon, chartypedesc >


enumeration type :
< id, qid, *ENUMTYPE*, path, exported, literals >

The literals field is a nonempty list of identifiers giving the enumeration literals (in order) for this type. Both characters and identifiers are admissible enumeration literals in Stage 3 VHDL.

array type :
< id, qid, *ARRAYTYPE*, path, exported, direction, lb, ub, elty >

Every array type has a name; unique names are generated for anonymous array types. Arrays in Stage 3 VHDL are one-dimensional, of index type UNIVERSAL_INTEGER. Note that the standard types BIT_VECTOR and STRING are array types.
The direction field contains either TO or DOWNTO, indicating whether the indices of the array increase or decrease, respectively. The lb and ub fields contain, respectively, abstract syntax trees for expressions that denote the array type’s lower and upper bounds. The elty (element type) field contains the descriptor of the type of the array’s elements. The values of the array’s lower and upper bounds are not necessarily static; therefore, array bounds-checking generally cannot be performed in Phase 1, but must be deferred to Phase 2 (”run time”), when state deltas are applied (”executed”).
The following function accepts arguments for the creation of an array type:
array-type-desc(array-name,qid,path,exported,direction,lower-bound,upper-bound,element-type) = <array-name,qid,*ARRAYTYPE*,path,exported,direction,lower-bound,upper-bound,element-type>

subtype :
  < id,qid,*SUBTYPE*,path,exported,lb,ub,basetype >

The lb and ub fields contain, respectively, abstract syntax trees for expressions that denote the subtype's lower and upper bounds. The basetype field contains the descriptor of the subtype's base type.

integer definition type :
  < id,qid,*INT-TYPE*,path,exported,lb,ub,parenttype >

The lb and ub fields contain, respectively, abstract syntax trees for expressions that denote the integer definition type's lower and upper bounds. The parenttype field contains the descriptor of the integer definition type's parent type, which is always UNIVERSAL_INTEGER.

record type :
  < id,qid,*RECORDTYPE*,path,exported,components >

The components field is a nonempty list of triplets; each triplet represents a field of this record type. The first element of each triplet is an identifier that is this field's name. The second element is a descriptor representing this field's basic type. The third element either is empty or contains an abstract syntax tree for Phase 2 initialization for components of objects declared to be of this record type. As noted above, records are not implemented as part of Stage 3 VHDL, and record types are included simply in preparation for the anticipated implementation of records.

6.2.1 Type and type descriptor predicates

Predicates are available for distinguishing specific types and type descriptors:

is-boolean?(type) = is-boolean-tdesc?(tdesc(type))

is-boolean-tdesc?(d) = idf(d)= BOOLEAN

is-bit?(type) = is-bit-tdesc?(tdesc(type))

is-bit-tdesc?(d) = idf(d)= BIT

is-integer?(type) = is-integer-tdesc?(tdesc(type))

is-integer-tdesc?(d) = tag(d)∈ (*INT* *INT-TYPE*)

is-real?(type) = is-real-tdesc?(tdesc(type))
is-real-tdesc?(d) = idf(d) = REAL

is-time?(type) = is-time-tdesc?(tdesc(type))

is-time-tdesc?(d) = idf(d) = TIME

is-void?(type) = is-void-tdesc?(tdesc(type))

is-void-tdesc?(d) = idf(d) = VOID

is-poly?(type) = is-poly-tdesc?(tdesc(type))

is-poly-tdesc?(d) = idf(d) = POLY

is-character?(type) = is-character-tdesc?(tdesc(type))

is-character-tdesc?(d) = idf(d) = CHARACTER

is-array?(type) = is-array-tdesc?(tdesc(type))

is-array-tdesc?(d) = tag(d) = *ARRAYTYPE*

is-record?(type) = is-record-tdesc?(tdesc(type))

is-record-tdesc?(d) = tag(d) = *RECORDTYPE*

is-bitvector?(type) = is-bitvector-tdesc?(tdesc(type))

is-bitvector-tdesc?(d)
= let idf = idf(d) in
  idf = BIT_VECTOR ∨ (consp(idf) ∧ hd(idf) = BIT_VECTOR)

is-string?(type) = is-string-tdesc?(tdesc(type))

is-string-tdesc?(d)
= let idf = idf(d) in
  idf = STRING ∨ (consp(idf) ∧ hd(idf) = STRING)

is-const?(type) = object-class(tmode(type)) = CONST

is-var?(type) = object-class(tmode(type)) = VAR

is-sig?(type) = object-class(tmode(type)) = SIG
6.2.2 Additional primitive accessors and predicates

Certain primitive functions can be applied to descriptors. For each kind of descriptor and field there exists an access function, ordinarily with the same name as the field (the only exception being idf instead of id). When applied to a descriptor of the proper kind, the access function extracts the contents of that descriptor's corresponding field. For example, if d is an object descriptor, then tag(d) = *OBJECT*.

If d is any descriptor, then the fully qualified name of the corresponding identifier instance is returned by function namef:

namef(d) = $\text{path}(\text{d})\text{idf}(\text{d})$

Defined below are the descriptor component access functions, a few related constructor and access functions, and some convenient additional predicates.

idf(d) = hd(d)

qid(d) = hd(tl(d))

tag(d) = hd(tl(tl(d)))

path(d) = hd(tl(tl(tl(d))))

exported(d) = hd(tl(tl(tl(tl(d))))))

type-tick-low(d) = hd(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(d))))))))

type-tick-high(d) = hd(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(d)))))))))

base-type(d) = hd(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(d))))))))))

parent-type(d) = hd(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(d)))))))))))

literals(d) = hd(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(d)))))))))))

pbody(d) = hd(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(d))))))))))

type(d) = hd(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(d))))))))))

value(d) = hd(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(d))))))))))

process(d) = hd(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(d)))))))))))

signatures(d) = hd(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(d))))))))))

body(d) = hd(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(d))))))))))

characterizations(d) = hd(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(d))))))))))

direction(d) = hd(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(d))))))))))

lb(d) = hd(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(d))))))))))

ub(d) = hd(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(d))))))))))
elt(y(d)) = hd(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(d))))))))))

components(d) = hd(tl(tl(tl(tl(tl(d))))))

pars(signature) = hd(signature)

rtype(signature) = hd(tl(signature))

get-base-type(d) = (tag(d)= *SUBTYPE* → base-type(d), d)

get-parent-type(d)
= (tag(d)∈ (*INT_TYPE* *DERIVED_TYPE*) → parent-type(d),
  error(cat("Not a derived type: ")(d))

mk-type(tmode)(tdesc) = (tmode,tdesc)

tmode(type) = hd(type)

tdesc(type) = hd(tl(type))

mk-tmode(object-class)(ref-mode) = (object-class,ref-mode)

object-class(tmode) = hd(tmode)

ref-mode(tmode) = hd(tl(tmode))

is-const?(type) = object-class(tmode(type))= CONST

is-var?(type) = object-class(tmode(type))= VAR

is-sig?(type) = object-class(tmode(type))= SIG

is-readable?(type) = ref-mode(tmode(type))∈ (VAL REF)

is-writable?(type) = ref-mode(tmode(type))∈ (REF OUT)

is-ref?(expr) = hd(expr)= REF

is-paggr?(expr) = hd(expr)= PAGGR

is-unary-op?(op) = op ∈ (NOT PLUS NEG ABS)

is-binary-op?(op) = op ∈ (AND NAND OR NOR XOR ADD SUB MUL DIV MOD REM EXP CONCAT)

is-relational-op?(op) = op ∈ (EQ NE LT LE GT GE)
6.3 Special-Purpose Environment Components and Functions

Certain component environments \( r \) of the tree-structured environment (TSE) part of the translation state have special identifier-like names that are bound to values specific to that environment’s associated program unit (design file, package, entity, architecture, process, procedure, function, or loop):

\[ *UNIT* : \]

\( r(*UNIT*) \) contains a tag that identifies what kind of program unit led to the creation of \( r \). These tags are \(*DESIGN-FILE* \) (design file), \(*PACKAGE* \) (package), \(*ENTITY* \) (entity), \(*ARCHITECTURE* \) (architecture), \(*PROCESS* \) (process), \(*PROCEDURE* \) (procedure), \(*FUNCTION* \) (function), and \(*LOOP* \) (loop). These tags are used to locate the innermost instance of a specific kind of environment (such as one associated with a process) on the current lookup path in the TSE.

\[ *LAB* : \]

When the tag of \( r(*UNIT*) \) is \(*ARCHITECTURE* \), the value bound to \( r(*LAB*) \) contains an identifier list of all the process labels declared in the program unit. When the tag of \( r(*UNIT*) \) is \(*PROCESS* \), \(*PROCEDURE* \), \(*FUNCTION* \), or \(*LOOP* \), the value bound to \( r(*LAB*) \) contains an identifier list of all the loop labels declared in the program unit. These lists are used to ensure that the identifiers serving as process and loop labels are distinct in (the top-level scope of) each program unit.

\[ *USED* : \]

The environment corresponding to any program unit admitting USE clauses in its declarative part has a \(*USED* \) component. In this case, \( r(*USED*) \) is a list representing the set of fully qualified names of packages named in USE clauses appearing in that declarative part, omitting the qualified names of packages that textually enclose those USE clauses. In order to ensure that the TSE used in Phase 2 of the Stage 3 VHDL translator can remain fixed as that generated by Phase 1, a slight restriction is imposed on the concrete syntax of Stage 3 VHDL. This restriction requires that all of the USE clauses in a declarative part appear only at the end of that declarative part. This will be discussed more fully later.

\[ *IMPT* : \]

Whenever a program unit has a \(*USED* \) component, it also has a \(*IMPT* \) component. \( r(*IMPT*) \) is a list of the fully qualified names of those items that can be imported into the program unit’s environment by the elaboration of the USE clauses in its declarative part. Consequently, no two of these fully qualified names can have the same last identifier (unqualified name), nor can the last identifier of any of these fully qualified names be the same as an identifier whose (local) declaration appears in this program unit’s declarative part.

\[ *SENS* : \]

When the tag of \( r(*UNIT*) \) is \(*PROCESS* \), the value bound to \( r(*SENS*) \) con-
tains a list of the transformed abstract syntax trees of the refs appearing in that
process' sensitivity list. Phase 1 translation of a WAIT statement occurring in a PROCESS
statement checks to make sure this *SENS* list is empty; otherwise, the WAIT occurs
illegally in a process with a sensitivity list.

Special Phase 1 Functions

Three special-purpose Phase 1 functions defined by SDVS are set-difference, new-array-
type-name, and delete-duplicates; these are provided by SDVS because of the difficulty
of writing their definitions in the DENOTE language (DL).

Function set-difference returns the set difference of two lists. Function new-array-
type-name returns a new unique name for an anonymous array type. Function delete-
duplicates destructively deletes duplicate items from a list.

Error Reporting

Phase 1 errors are reported by three SDVS functions: error, which takes a string-valued er-
ror message; error-pp, which takes a string-valued error message and an additional VHDL
abstract syntax subtree to be pretty-printed; and cat, which makes a string from its (vari-
able number of) arguments, each of which is made into a string.

6.4 Phase 1 Semantic Domains and Functions

The formal description of Phase 1 translation consists of semantic domains and semantic
functions, the latter being functions from syntactic to semantic domains. Compound se-
monic domains are defined in terms of primitive semantic domains. Similarly, primitive
semantic functions are unspecified (their definitions being understood implicitly) and the
remaining semantic functions are defined (by syntactic cases) via semantic equations.

The principal Phase 1 semantic functions (and corresponding Stage 3 VHDL language
constructs for which they perform static analysis) are: DFT (design files), ENT (entity
declarations), ART (architecture bodies), PDT (port declarations), DT (declarations),
CST (concurrent statements), SLT (sensitivity lists), SST (sequential statements), AT
(case alternatives), DRT (discrete ranges), WT (waveforms), TRT (transactions), MET
(reference lists), ET and RT (expressions), OT1 (unary operators), OT2 (binary and
relational operators), B (bit literals), and N (numeric literals).

Each of the principal semantic functions requires an appropriate syntactic argument — an
abstract syntactic object (tree) generated by the Stage 3 VHDL language parser. Most of
the semantic functions take (at least) the following additional arguments:

- a path, indicating the currently visible portion of the (partially constructed) tree-
structured environment;

- a continuation, specifying which Phase 1 semantic function to invoke next; and

48
• a (partially constructed) TSE, containing the information gathered from declarations previously elaborated and checked.

In the absence of errors, the Phase 1 semantic functions update the TSE. Moreover, ET and RT also construct a pair consisting of an expression’s type and its static value. The type is either a value type or a reference type; see Section 6.2. Only an expression with a reference type may be the target of an assignment operation.

An expression’s static value is *UNDEF* ("undefined") unless it is a static expression, in which case its static value is determined as follows. A static expression is:

• a boolean, bit, numeric, or character literal: the static value is the value of the corresponding constant;

• an identifier explicitly declared as a scalar constant and initialized by a static expression: the static value is the static value of the initialization expression;

• an operator applied to operands that are static expressions: the static value is determined by the semantics of the operator and the static value of the operands;

• a static expression enclosed in parentheses: the static value is the static value of the enclosed static expression.

Note that a subscripted array reference, even if the subscript is a static expression and the array was declared as a constant initialized with a list of static expressions, is not a static expression. (The same is true for a selected record component.)

6.4.1 Phase 1 Semantic Domains

The semantic domains and function types for Phase 1 of the Stage 3 VHDL translator are as follows.

**Primitive Semantic Domains**

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Bool} & = \{ \text{FALSE, TRUE} \} & \text{boolean constants} \\
\text{Bit} & = \{ 0, 1 \} & \text{bit constants} \\
\text{Char} & = \{ (\text{CHAR 0}), \ldots, (\text{CHAR 127}) \} & \text{character constants (ASCII-128 representations)} \\
\text{n : N} & = \{ 0, 1, 2, \ldots \} & \text{numeric constants (natural numbers)}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{id : Id} & & \text{identifiers} \\
\text{SysId} & & \text{system-generated identifiers (disjoint from Id)} \\
\text{t : TEnv} & & \text{tree-structured environments (TSEs)} \\
\text{d : Desc} & & \text{descriptors (see Section 6.2)} \\
\text{sd : SD} & & \text{state deltas}
\end{align*}
\]

49
Assert                      SDVS Simplifier assertions

Error                       error messages

Compound Semantic Domains

ebl : Elbl = Id + SysId       TSE edge labels
p, q: Path = Elbl*            TSE paths
qname: Name = Elbl (. Elbl)*  qualified names

d : Dv = Desc                 denotable values (descriptors)
r : Env = Id → (Dv + {*UNBOUND*})  environments

Tmode = {PATH} × Id* +       type modes
     ({CONST, VAR, SIG, DUMMY} ×
     {VAL, OUT, REF, OBJ, ACC, TYP})

w : Type = Tmode × Desc      types
e : Value                     values

h : CSet = P(Boolean) + P(Char) + P_f(N) + {INT} + {ENUM}  case selection sets [P(*) denotes “powerset of”
                                                                      and P_f(*) denotes “set of finite subsets of”]

u : TDC = TEnv → Ans         declaration & concurrent statement continuations
c : TSC = TDC                sequential statement continuations
k : TEC = (Type × Value) → TSC expression continuations
h : TMC = (Type* × Value*) → TSC reference list continuations
y : TAC = CSet → TSC         case alternative continuations
v : TTC = Type → Ans          type continuations
z : Desc → TDC               descriptor continuations

Ans = (SD + Assert)* + Error final answers

6.4.2 Phase 1 Semantic Functions

The semantic functions for Phase 1 of the Stage 3 VHDL translator are as follows.

DFT : Design → Ans           design file static semantics

ENT : Ent → Path → TDC → TDC  entity declaration static semantics
ART : Arch → Path → TDC → TDC architecture body static semantics

PDT : PDec* → Path → Bool → TDC → TDC  port declaration static semantics
DT :   Dec* → Path → Bool → TDC → TDC  declaration static semantics

50
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Static Semantics</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CST</td>
<td>CStat* → Path → TDe → TDe</td>
<td>concurrent statement static semantics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLT</td>
<td>Ref* → Path → TDe → TDe</td>
<td>sensitivity list static semantics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SST</td>
<td>SStat* → Path → TSc → TSc</td>
<td>sequential statement static semantics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AT</td>
<td>Alt* → Type → Path → TAc → TSc</td>
<td>case alternative static semantics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DRT</td>
<td>Drg → Type → Path → TAc → TSc</td>
<td>discrete range static semantics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WT</td>
<td>Wave → Path → TEc → TSc</td>
<td>waveform static semantics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRT</td>
<td>Trans* → Path → TEc → TSc</td>
<td>transaction static semantics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MET</td>
<td>Ref* → Path → TMc → TSc</td>
<td>reference list static semantics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET</td>
<td>Expr → Path → TEc → TSc</td>
<td>expression static semantics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RT</td>
<td>Expr → Path → TEc → TSc</td>
<td>expression static semantics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OT1</td>
<td>Uop → TEc → TEc</td>
<td>unary operator static semantics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OT2</td>
<td>Bop → TEc → (Type × Value) → TEc</td>
<td>binary, relational operator static semantics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>BitLit → Bit</td>
<td>bit values of bit literals (primitive)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>NumLit → N</td>
<td>integer values of numeric literals (primitive)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6.5 Phase 1 Semantic Equations

6.5.1 Stage 3 VHDL Design Files

(DFT)

\( \text{DFT} \{ \text{DESIGN-FILE} \ id \ \text{pkg-decl}^* \ \text{pkg-body}^* \ \text{use-clause}^* \ \text{ent-decl} \ \text{arch-body} \} \)

= let \( t_0 = \text{mk-initial-tse}() \)
  \( \text{and } p_0 = \%(\varepsilon)(i) \) \in
  \( \text{let } id_1 = \text{hd}(\text{tl}(\text{ent-decl})) \) \in
  \( \text{let } t_1 = \text{enter-standard}(t_0) \)
  \( \text{and } p_1 = \%(p_0)(i) \) \in
  \( \text{let } t_2 = \text{enter}(t_1)(\varepsilon)(i)(\langle ,*\text{DESIGN-FILE}^*,\varepsilon,tt \rangle) \) \in
  \( \text{let } t_3 = \text{enter}(\text{extend}(t_2)(\varepsilon)(i)(p_0)(\langle *,\text{UNIT}^* \rangle(\langle ,*\text{DESIGN-FILE}^* \rangle) \in
  \( \text{let } t_4 = \text{enter}(t_3)(p_0)(\langle *,\text{LAB}^* \rangle(\langle ,*u \rangle) \) \in
  \( \text{let } t_5 = \text{enter}(t_4)(p_0)(\langle *,\text{USED}^* \rangle(\langle ,*u \rangle) \) \in
  \( \text{let } t_6 = \text{enter}(t_5)(p_0)(\langle *,\text{IMPT}^* \rangle(\langle ,*u \rangle) \) \in
  \text{enter-objects}
  \( ((\text{VHDLTIME},\text{VHDLTIME PREVIOUS} )) \)
  \( (\langle ,*\text{OBJECT}^*,\varepsilon,tt \rangle, \)
  \( (\langle \text{DUMMY},\text{VAL} \rangle,\text{vhdltime-type-desc}(t_0)),\langle *,\text{UNDEF}^*,\varepsilon >)/t_0(t_0)(\varepsilon)(u) \)

where
\( u = \lambda t . \text{let use-clause} = (\text{USE}((\text{STANDARD} , \text{ALL} ))) \) \in
\( \text{DT} \{ \text{use-clause} \} (\varepsilon)(tt)(u_1)(t) \)

where \( u_1 = \lambda t . \text{DT} \{ \text{pkg-decl}^* \} (p_0)(tt)(u_2)(t) \)

where \( u_2 = \lambda t . \text{DT} \{ \text{pkg-body}^* \} (p_0)(tt)(u_3)(t) \)

where \( u_3 = \lambda t . \text{DT} \{ \text{use-clause}^* \} (p_0)(tt)(u_4)(t) \)

where \( u_4 = \lambda t . \text{ENT} \{ \text{ent-decl} \} (p_0)(u_5)(t) \)

where \( u_5 = \lambda t . \text{ART} \{ \text{arch-body} \} (p_1)(u_6)(t) \)

where
\( u_6 = \lambda t . \text{let unit = DFX} \{ \text{design-file} \} (t) \) \in

phase2(unit)(t)

enter-standard(t)

= let \( t_1 = \text{enter-package}(t)(\varepsilon)(\text{STANDARD} ) \) \in
  \( \text{let } t_2 = \text{enter-package}(t_1)(\varepsilon)(\text{TEXTIO} ) \) \in
  \( \text{let } t_3 = \text{enter}(t_2)(\varepsilon)(\text{USED}^* )\langle ,*u \rangle \) \in
  \( \text{let } t_4 = \text{enter}(t_3)(\varepsilon)(\langle *,\text{IMPT}^* \rangle\langle ,*u \rangle) \) \in
  \( \text{let } t_5 = \text{enter-predefined}(t_4)(\text{STANDARD} ) \) \in
  \( t_5 \)

enter-package(t)(p)(i)

= let \( p_1 = \%(p)(i) \) \in
  \( \text{let package-desc = } \langle ,*\text{PACKAGE}^*,p,tt,\varepsilon \rangle \) \in
  \( \text{let } t_1 = \text{enter}(t)(p)(i)(\text{package-desc}) \in
  \( \text{let } t_2 = \text{enter}(\text{extend}(t_1)(p)(i)(p_1)(\langle *,\text{UNIT}^* \rangle(\langle ,*\text{PACKAGE}^* \rangle) \) \in
  \( \text{let } t_3 = \text{enter}(t_2)(p_1)(\langle *,\text{USED}^* \rangle(\langle ,*u \rangle) \) \in
  \( \text{let } t_4 = \text{enter}(t_3)(p_1)(\langle *,\text{IMPT}^* \rangle(\langle ,*u \rangle) \) \in
  \( t_4 \)

enter-predefined(t)(p)

= let \( t_1 = \text{enter}(t)(p)(\text{BOOLEAN} )\langle ,*\text{BOOLEAN}^*,(\text{STANDARD} ,tt,\text{FALSE} ,\text{TRUE} ) \) \in
  \( \text{let } t_2 = \text{enter}
  \( \langle t_1)(p)(\text{BIT} ) \)
  \( \langle ,*\text{BIT}^*,(\text{STANDARD} ,tt,\text{mk-bit-simp-symbol}(0), \)
  \text{mk-bit-simp-symbol}(1)) \) \in
  \( \text{let } t_3 = \text{enter}(t_2)(p)(\text{UNIVERSAL INTEGER} )\langle ,*\text{INT}^*,(\text{STANDARD} ,tt,\varepsilon ,\varepsilon ) \) \in
  \( \text{let } t_4 = \text{enter}(t_3)(p)(\text{INTEGER} )\langle ,*\text{INT}^*,(\text{STANDARD} ,tt,\varepsilon ,\varepsilon ) \) \in
  \( \text{let } t_5 = \text{enter}(t_4)(p)(\text{REAL} )\langle ,*\text{REAL}^*,(\text{STANDARD} ,tt,\varepsilon ,\varepsilon ) \) \in

52
let $t_0 = \text{enter}(t_0)(p)(\text{TIME} \,(\langle\epsilon, *\text{TIME}\*, \text{STANDARD} \rangle, tt, \epsilon, \epsilon))$ in
let $t_1 = \text{enter}(t_1)(p)(\text{VHDLTIME} \,(\langle\epsilon, *\text{VHDLTIME}\*, \text{STANDARD} \rangle, tt, \epsilon, \epsilon))$ in
let $t_2 = \text{enter}(t_2)(p)(\text{VOID} \,(\langle\epsilon, *\text{VOID}\*, \text{STANDARD} \rangle, tt, \epsilon, \epsilon))$ in
let $t_3 = \text{enter}(t_3)(p)(\text{POLY} \,(\langle\epsilon, *\text{POLY}\*, \text{STANDARD} \rangle, tt, \epsilon, \epsilon))$ in
let $t_4 = \text{enter}(t_4)(p)$ in
let $t_5 = \text{enter}(t_5)(p)$ in
let $t_6 = \text{enter}(t_6)(p)$ in
let $t_7 = \text{enter}(t_7)(p)$ in
let $t_8 = \text{enter}(t_8)(p)$ in
let $t_9 = \text{enter}(t_9)(p)$ in
let $t_{10} = \text{enter}(t_{10})(p)$ in
let $t_{11} = \text{enter}(t_{11})(p)$ in
let $t_{12} = \text{enter}(t_{12})(p)$ in

enter-characters($t_0$, $p$)

= let id$^+$ = gen-characters(0)(127) in
let field-values$^-$ = $<$\epsilon, *\text{ENUMTYPE}\*, p, tt, hd(id$^+$), last(id$^+$), id$^+$ $>$ in
let char-type-desc = cons(\text{CHARACTER}, \text{field-values$^-$}) in
let field-values$^+$ = $<$\epsilon, *\text{ENUMELT}\*, p, tt, mk-type((\text{CONST VAL}), (\text{char-type-desc}), field-values$^+$) in
let enter-characters(id$^+$(field-values$^+$))(t)(p)(u) with
= let $u = \lambda t_1, \text{enter}(t_1)(p)(\text{CHARACTER})(\text{field-values})$ in

enter-string($t$, $p$)

= let expr = (\text{NUM 1}) in
let string-type-desc = array-type-desc (\text{STRING} \,(\langle\epsilon \rangle)(p)(tt)(\text{TO} \rangle)(\text{second(\text{EX}[\text{expr}] (p)(t)))$ in
let enter($t$, $p$, (\text{STRING} \,(\langle\epsilon \rangle)(p)(tt)(\text{TO})$ in

gen-characters(start, finish)

= (\text{start} = \text{finish} \rightarrow \text{(\text{CHAR, finish})}, \text{cons}((\text{CHAR, start}), \text{gen-characters(start+1, finish)}))

enter-characters(id$^+$, (field-values$^+$))(t)(p)(u)

= (null(id$^+$) $\rightarrow$ u(t),
let id = hd(id$^+$) in
(t(p)(id)$\neq$ \(*\text{UNBOUND}\$ $\rightarrow$ error(cat("Duplicate object declaration: ",$\langle\$p (id))$,)
, let t$1$ = enter(t)(p)(id)(field-values) in
let enter-characters(id$^+$(field-values))(t$1$(p)(u))

6.5.2 Entity Declarations

(ENT1) \text{ENT}[\text{ENTITY id port-decl$^*$ decl$^*$ opt-id } \langle p \rangle \langle u \rangle \langle t \rangle \]

= (~\text{null(opt-id} \land opt-id \neq id \rightarrow \text{error}

(cat("Entity declaration ", id)

(" ended with incorrect identifier: ", opt-id)),
let t$1$ = enter(t)(p)(id)(\langle\epsilon, \text{*ENTITY}*, \epsilon, \epsilon \rangle $\rangle$ in
let p$1$ = \% (p)(id) in
let t$2$ = enter(extend(t)(p)(id))(p$1$)(\text{*UNIT*})(\langle\epsilon, \text{*ENTITY}*, \epsilon \rangle) $\rangle$ in
let t$3$ = enter(t)(p$1$)(\text{*LAB*})(\langle\epsilon, \epsilon \rangle) $\rangle$ in
let t$4$ = enter(t)(p$1$)(\text{*USED*})(\langle\epsilon, \epsilon \rangle) $\rangle$ in
let t$5$ = enter(t)(p$1$)(\text{*IMPT*})(\langle\epsilon, \epsilon \rangle) $\rangle$ in
\text{PDT}[\{\text{port-decl$^*$ } \} \langle p \rangle \langle t \rangle \langle u \rangle \langle t \rangle \]

where $u_1 = \lambda t, \text{DT}[\text{decl$^*$ } \langle p \rangle \langle t \rangle \langle u \rangle \langle t \rangle)$
6.5.3 Architecture Bodies

\[(ART) \text{ART [ ARCHITECTURE id}_1 \text{id}_2 \text{ decl}^* \text{ con-stat}^* \text{ opt-id }] (p)(u)(t)\]
\[= (\neg \text{null}(\text{opt-id}) \land \text{opt-id} \neq \text{id}_1)\]
\[\rightarrow \text{error}\]
\[(\text{cat}("Architecture body ") (\text{id}_1)\]
\["ended with incorrect identifier ") (\text{opt-id}),\]
\[\text{let } d = \text{lookup}(t)(p)(\text{id}_2) \text{ in}\]
\[(d = \text{*UNBOUND* } \lor \text{tag}(d) \neq \text{*ENTITY*}\]
\[\rightarrow \text{error}(\text{cat}("No entity ") (\text{id}_2)(" for architecture body ") (\text{id}_1)),\]
\[\text{let } p_1 = \% (p)(\text{id}_1) \text{ in}\]
\[\text{let } t_1 = \text{enter}(t)(p)(\text{id}_1)(\langle\varepsilon, \text{*ARCHITECTURE*}, \text{p}, \text{ff}\rangle) \text{ in}\]
\[\text{let } t_2 = \text{enter}(\text{extend}(t_1)(p)(\text{id}_1))(p_1)(\text{*UNIT*})(\langle\varepsilon, \text{*ARCHITECTURE*} \rangle) \text{ in}\]
\[\text{let } t_3 = \text{enter}(t_2)(p_1)(\text{*LAB*})(\langle\varepsilon, \varepsilon\rangle) \text{ in}\]
\[\text{let } t_4 = \text{enter}(t_3)(p_1)(\text{*USED*})(\langle\varepsilon, \varepsilon\rangle) \text{ in}\]
\[\text{let } t_5 = \text{enter}(t_4)(p_1)(\text{*IMPT*})(\langle\varepsilon, \varepsilon\rangle) \text{ in}\]
\[\text{DT [ decl* ] (p_1)(tt)(u_1)(t_5) where } u_1 = \lambda t_5 \text{ CST [ con-stat* ] (p_1)(u)(t_6))}\]

6.5.4 Port Declarations

\[(PDT0) \text{PDT [ } \varepsilon \text{ ] (p)(vis)(u)(t) = u(t)}\]

\[(PDT1) \text{PDT [ port-decl port-dec* ] (p)(vis)(u)(t)}\]
\[= \text{PDT [ port-dec ] (p)(vis)(u_1)(t) where } u_1 = \lambda t \text{ PDT [ port-dec* ] (p)(vis)(u)(t)}\]

The elaboration and checking of a sequence of port declarations proceeds from the first to the last declaration in the sequence.

\[(PDT2) \text{PDT [ DEC PORT id}^+ \text{ mode type-mark opt-expr ] (p)(vis)(u)(t)}\]
\[= \text{lookup-type}(\text{type-mark})(p)(z)(t) where\]
\[z = \lambda d \text{let type = (case mode}\]
\[\text{IN } \rightarrow \text{mk-type}((\text{SIG VAL}) (d),\]
\[\text{OUT } \rightarrow \text{mk-type}((\text{SIG OUT}) (d),\]
\[\text{(INOUT ,BUFFER ) } \rightarrow \text{mk-type}((\text{SIG REF}) (d),\]
\[\text{OTHERWISE } \rightarrow \text{error}\]
\[\text{(cat("Illegal mode in port declaration:") (port-dec)) in}\]
\[\text{process-dec(id}^+)(\text{type})(\text{opt-expr})(p)(\text{vis})(u)(t)\]

Refer to the discussion following semantic equation DT5 in Section 6.5.5.

\[(PDT3) \text{PDT [ SLCDEC PORT id}^+ \text{ mode slice-name opt-expr ] (p)(vis)(u)(t)}\]
\[= \text{let (type-mark,discrete-range) = slice-name in}\]
\[\text{lookup-type}(\text{type-mark})(p)(z)(t) where\]
\[z = \lambda d \text{let type = (case mode}\]
\[\text{IN } \rightarrow \text{mk-type}((\text{SIG VAL}) (d),\]
\[\text{OUT } \rightarrow \text{mk-type}((\text{SIG OUT}) (d),\]
\[\text{(INOUT ,BUFFER ) } \rightarrow \text{mk-type}((\text{SIG REF}) (d),\]
OTHERWISE
→ error
   (cat("Illegal mode in port declaration: ")
   (port-decl))) in
process-slcdec
(id+)(type)(discrete-range)(opt-expr)(p)(vis)(u)(t)

Refer to the discussion following semantic equation DT6 in Section 6.5.5.

6.5.5 Declarations

(DT0) \[ DT \{ \epsilon \} (p)(vis)(u)(t) = u(t) \]

(DT1) \[ DT \{ \text{decl decl}\} (p)(vis)(u)(t) \]
\[ = DT \{ \text{decl} \} (p)(vis)(u_1)(t) \]
\[ \text{where } u_1 = \lambda. DT \{ \text{decl} \} (p)(vis)(u)(t) \]

(DT2) \[ DT \{ \text{pkg-decl pkg-decl}\} (p)(vis)(u)(t) \]
\[ = DT \{ \text{pkg-decl} \} (p)(vis)(u_1)(t) \]
\[ \text{where } u_1 = \lambda. DT \{ \text{pkg-decl} \} (p)(vis)(u)(t) \]

(DT3) \[ DT \{ \text{pkg-body pkg-body}\} (p)(vis)(u)(t) \]
\[ = DT \{ \text{pkg-body} \} (p)(vis)(u_1)(t) \]
\[ \text{where } u_1 = \lambda. DT \{ \text{pkg-body} \} (p)(vis)(u)(t) \]

(DT4) \[ DT \{ \text{use-clause use-clause}\} (p)(vis)(u)(t) \]
\[ = DT \{ \text{use-clause} \} (p)(vis)(u_1)(t) \]
\[ \text{where } u_1 = \lambda. DT \{ \text{use-clause} \} (p)(vis)(u)(t) \]

The elaboration and checking of a sequence of declarations proceeds from the first to the last declaration in the sequence.

(DT5) \[ DT \{ \text{DEC object-class id+ type-mark opt-expr} \} (p)(vis)(u)(t) \]
\[ = \text{let } d = \text{find-progunit-env}(t(p) \text{ in} } \]
\[ \text{let } t_g = \text{tag}(d) \text{ in} \]
\[ \text{(case object-class} \]
\[ \text{CONST_SYSGEN) \rightarrow lookup-type(type-mark)(p)(z)(t), } \]
\[ \text{VAR} \]
\[ \text{→ (case } t_g \]
\[ \text{(*PACKAGE*, *ENTITY*, *ARCHITECTURE*)} \]
\[ \text{→ error} \]
\[ \text{(cat("Illegal VARIABLE declaration in "))(tg)(" context: ")} \]
\[ \text{(decl)), } \]
\[ \text{OTHERWISE → lookup-type(type-mark)(p)(z)(t)), } \]
\[ \text{SIG} \]
\[ \text{→ (case } t_g \]
\[ \text{(*PROCESS*, *PROCEDURE*, *FUNCTION*)} \]
\[ \text{→ error} \]
\[ \text{(cat("Illegal SIGNAL declaration in "))(tg)(" context: ")} \]
\[ \text{(decl)), } \]
\[ \text{OTHERWISE → lookup-type(type-mark)(p)(z)(t)), } \]
\[ \text{OTHERWISE → error} \]
\[ \text{(cat("Illegal object class in declaration: ")}(decl))) } \]
\[ \text{where} \]
\[ z = \lambda d. \text{let } \text{type} = \text{(object-class = CONST } \rightarrow \text{mk-type((CONST VAL) })(d), } \]
\[ \text{mk-type(mk-tmode(object-class)(REF ))(d)) \text{ in} \]
\[ \text{process-dec(id+)(type)(opt-expr)(p)(vis)(u)(t) } \]

55
find-progunit-env(t)(p)
\[= (t(p)[*UNIT* \neq *UNBOUND* \to p, \]
\[\text{null}(p) \rightarrow \text{error("No program unit ??! ")}, \]
\[\text{find-progunit-env}(t)(\text{rest}(p)))]\)

lookup-type(id\(^*\))(p)(x)(t)
\[= (\text{null}(id\(^*\)) \to z(\text{void-type-desc}(t)), \]
\[\text{name-type}(id\(^*\))(\varepsilon)(p)(t)(v) \quad \text{where} \]
\[v = \lambda w. (\text{second}(tmode(w)) = \text{TYP} \to z(tdesc(w))), \]
\[\text{error}(\text{cat("Not a type: "})(\text{nameof}(tdesc(w))))])\)

name-type(name\(^*\))(w)(p)(t)(v)
\[= (\text{null}(w)) \]
\[\rightarrow \text{let } w_1 = \text{lookup2}(t)(p)(\varepsilon)(\text{hd}(\text{name})) \in \]
\[\quad (w_1 = *UNBOUND* \rightarrow \text{error}(\text{cat("Unbound identifier: ")(\$}(p)(\text{hd}(\text{name})))), \]
\[\text{let } tm = tmode(w_1) \quad \text{and } d = tdesc(w_1) \in \]
\[\quad (\text{second}(tm) \in \text{OBJ} \text{TYP} \rightarrow \text{name-type}(tl(name))(w_1)(p)(t)(v), \]
\[\text{hd}(tm) = \text{PATH} \]
\[\rightarrow (\neg \text{validate-access(name)}(w_1)(\text{second}(tm)) \]
\[\rightarrow \text{error}(\text{cat("Illegal access via: ")(\text{nameof}(d)))), \]
\[\text{name-type}(tl(name))((\text{PATH}, tl(\text{second}(tm))), d))(p)(t)(v), \]
\[\text{error} \]
\[\quad \text{cat("Shouldn't happen in auxiliary semantic function NAME-TYPE: ")}(w_1)))]\)
\[\text{let } d = tdesc(w) \in \]
\[\text{let } tg = \text{tag}(d) \in \]
\[\text{null(name)} \]
\[\rightarrow (tg \in (*\text{PROCEDURE*} *\text{FUNCTION*}) \]
\[\rightarrow (\text{null}(\text{pars}(\text{hd}(\text{signatures}(d)))) \rightarrow v(\text{extract-rtype}(d)), \]
\[\text{error}(\text{cat("Missing subprogram arguments: ")}(\text{nameof}(d)))), \]
\[v(w)), \]
\[\text{let } x = \text{hd}(\text{name}) \quad \text{and } tm = tmode(w) \in \]
\[\text{cons}(x) \]
\[\rightarrow (\text{second}(tm) = \text{TYP} \]
\[\rightarrow (\text{null}(tl(x)) \]
\[\rightarrow \text{name-type}(tl(name))((\text{DUMMY}, \text{VAL}, d))(p)(t)(v), \]
\[\text{error} \]
\[\quad \text{cat("Explicit conversion of multiple expressions to type: ")}(\text{nameof}(d))), \]
\[\text{list-type}(x)(p)(t)(v) \quad \text{where} \]
\[v = \lambda w. ((\text{second}(tm) = \text{OBJ} \land \text{is-array?}(\text{type}(d))) \]
\[\lor (\text{second}(tm) \in (\text{REF} \text{VAL}) \land \text{is-array-tdesc?}(d)) \]
\[\rightarrow (\text{length}(x) > 1 \]
\[\rightarrow \text{error} \]
\[\quad \text{cat("Too many array indices for: ")(namef}(d)), \]
\[\text{(is-integer-tdesc?}(\text{get-base-type}(tdesc(\text{hd}(w_1))))) \]
\[\rightarrow \text{name-type} \]
\[\quad (tl(name)) \]
\[\quad ((\text{second}(tm) = \text{OBJ} \]
\[\rightarrow \text{mk-type} \]
\[\quad (tmode(\text{type}(d)))(\text{elty}(tdesc(\text{type}(d)))), \]
\[\text{mk-type}(tm)(\text{elty}(d)))(p)(t)(v). \]
error
  (cat("Non-integer array index for: ")(namef
(d))))),
tg ∈ (*PROCEDURE* *FUNCTION*)
  → let rtype = compatible-signatures(w1)(signatures(d)) in
    (null(rtype)
      → error
        (cat("Incompatible parameter types for: ")
          (namef(d))),
        name-type(tl(name))(rtype)(p(t)(v)),
        error(cat("Cannot have an argument list: ")(namef
(d))))),
((second(tm) = OBJ ∧ is-record?(type(d))
  ∨ second(tm) ∈ (REF VAL) ∧ is-record-tdesc?(d))
  → let d1 = (second(tm) = OBJ → tdesc(type(d)), d) in
    let d2 = lookup-record-field(components(d1))(x) in
      (d2 = *UNBOUND* → error(cat("Unknown record field: ")(x)),
        let tm′ = (second(tm) = OBJ → tmode(type(d)), tm) in
          name-type(tl(name))(mk-type(tm′)(d2))(p(t)(v)),
          second(tm) ≠ OBJ ∨ second(tm) ≠ TYP
          → let w1 = lookup-local(x)(%(path(d))(idf(d)))(p)(t) in
            (w1 = *UNBOUND*
              → error(cat("Unknown identifier: ")(namef(tdesc(w1)))),
              second(tmode(w1)) ≠ ACC → name-type(tl(name))(w1)(p(t)(v)),
              hd(tm) = PATH
              → ¬ null(tl(name)) ∧ ¬ validate-access(name)(w1)(second(tm))
                → error(cat("Illegal access via: ")(namef(tdesc(w1)))),
                name-type
                  (tl(name))(PATH . tl(second(tm)), tdesc(w1))(p(t)(v)),
                error
                  (cat("Shouldn’t happen in auxiliary semantic function NAME-TYPE: ")
                    (w1))),
            error(cat("Illegal access via: ")(namef(d)))))))
lookup2(t)(p)(q)(id)
  = let d = t(p)(q)(id) in
    (d = *UNBOUND*
      → ¬ null(p) → lookup2(t)(rest(p))(cons(last(p),q))(id), *UNBOUND*),
    (case tag(d)
      (*OBJECT*, *ENUMELT* → ((DUMMY, OBJ), d),
        (*PACKAGE*, *PROCESS*, *PROCEDURE*, *FUNCTION*,
          *LOOPNAME*, *PROCESSNAME*)
        → ((PATH, q), d),
        OTHERWISE → ((DUMMY, TYP), d)))
validate-access(name)(w)(q)
  = let tg = tag(tdesc(w)) in
    (tg ∈ (*PROCEDURE* *FUNCTION*)
      ∧ ¬ null(tl(name)) ∧ ¬ consp(hd(tl(name))))
      → ¬ null(q) ∧ hd(name) = hd(q),
      tt)
list-type(expr*)(p)(t)(vv)
  = (null(expr*) → vv(ε),
    let expr = hd(expr*) in
    ET [ expr ] (p(k)(t)
where
\[ k = \lambda (w, e). t. \]
\[ (\text{second}(\text{tmode}(w)) = \text{ACC} \rightarrow \text{error}(\text{cat}(\text{"Non-value (an access): "}(\text{nameof}(\text{tdesc}(w)))(\text{expr})), \text{list-type}(\text{tl(expr)}))(p)(t)(\lambda w^*. \text{v}v(\text{cons}(w, w^*)))) \]

\[ \text{lookup-local}(id)(\text{definition-path})(\text{occurrence-path})(t) = \text{let } d = t(\text{definition-path})(id) \text{ in} \]
\[ (d = \text{UNBOUND*} \rightarrow \text{UNBOUND*}, \)
\[ \text{let } t_g = \text{tag}(d) \text{ in} \]
\[ (t_g \in \text{*LOOPNAME* *PROCESSNAME*} \rightarrow ((\text{DUMMY}, \text{ACC}), d), \)
\[ (\text{prefix-path}(\text{definition-path})(\text{occurrence-path}) \lor \text{exported}(d) \rightarrow (\text{case } t_g \)
\[ \text{*OBJECT* *ENUMELT*} \rightarrow ((\text{DUMMY}, \text{OBJ}), d), \]
\[ \text{*PACKAGE* *PROCESS* *PROCEDURE* *FUNCTION*} \rightarrow ((\text{DUMMY}, \text{ACC}), d), \]
\[ \text{OTHERWISE} \rightarrow ((\text{DUMMY}, \text{TYP}), d)), \]
\[ \text{UNBOUND*})) \)

\[ \text{compatible-signatures}(\text{types})(\text{signatures}) = (\text{null}(\text{signatures}) \rightarrow \varepsilon, \)
\[ \text{let } \text{signature} = \text{hd}(\text{signatures}) \text{ in} \]
\[ (\text{compatible-par-types}(\text{types})(\text{extract-par-types}(\text{pars}(\text{signature}))) \rightarrow \text{rtype}(\text{signature}), \]
\[ \text{compatible-signatures}(\text{types})(\text{tl}(\text{signatures}))) \)

\[ \text{compatible-par-types}(\text{actuals})(\text{formals}) = (\text{length}(\text{actuals}) \neq \text{length}(\text{formals}) \rightarrow \text{fl}, \)
\[ \text{length}(\text{actuals}) = 0 \rightarrow \text{tt}, \]
\[ \text{let } w_1 = \text{hd}(\text{actuals}) \]
\[ \text{and } w_2 = \text{hd}(\text{formals}) \text{ in} \]
\[ (\text{match-types}(\text{tdesc}(w_1), \text{tdesc}(w_2)) \rightarrow \text{let } m_1 = \text{ref-mode}(\text{tmode}(w_1)) \]
\[ \text{and } m_2 = \text{ref-mode}(\text{tmode}(w_2)) \text{ in} \]
\[ (m_1 = \text{REF} \lor m_1 = m_2 \rightarrow \text{compatible-par-types}(\text{tl}(\text{actuals}))(\text{tl}(\text{formals})), \text{fl}, \]
\[ \text{fl}) \)

\[ \text{extract-par-types}(\text{pars}) = (\text{null}(\text{pars}) \rightarrow \varepsilon, \text{cons}(\text{second}(\text{hd}(\text{pars})), \text{extract-par-types}(\text{tl}(\text{pars})))) \)

\[ \text{extract-rtype}(d) = \text{let } \text{signature} = \text{hd}(\text{signatures}(d)) \text{ in} \]
\[ \text{rtype}(\text{signature}) \]

\[ \text{lookup-record-field}(\text{comp*})(\text{id}) = (\text{null}(\text{comp*}) \rightarrow \text{UNBOUND*}, \)
\[ \text{let } (x, d) = \text{hd}(\text{comp*}) \text{ in} \]
\[ (x = \text{id} \rightarrow d, \text{lookup-record-field}(\text{tl}(\text{comp*}))(\text{id}))) \]

\[ \text{process-dec}(\text{id}^+)(w)(\text{opt-expr})(p)(\text{vis})(u)(t) = (\text{null}(\text{opt-expr}) \rightarrow (\text{is-const?}(w) \rightarrow \text{error}(\text{cat}(\text{"Uninitialized constant: "})(\text{OPT}(\text{hd}(\text{id}^+)))), \]
\[ \text{enter-objects}(\text{id}^+)(\text{<e, *OBJECT* .p.vis,w,*UNDEF* .e>})(t)(p)(u)), \]
\[ \text{let } \text{expr} = \text{opt-expr} \text{ in} \]
\[ \text{RT}[\text{expr}](p)(k)(t) \)
\[ \text{where} \]
\[ k = \lambda (w_1, e). t. \]
\[ \text{let } d = \text{tdesc}(w) \]

58
and \( d_1 = \text{tdesc}(w_1) \) in
\((\text{match-types}(d_1,d_1)\)
\rightarrow \text{let init-val} = \((\text{is-sysgen}(w)\land \text{is-const}(w))\)
\land \neg(\text{is-array}(w)\lor \text{is-record}(w))\)
\rightarrow \epsilon,\)
\(*\text{UNDEF}^*\) in
\text{enter-objects}(id^*)(<\varepsilon,\text{OBJECT}^*,p,\text{vis},w,\text{init-val},\varepsilon>)(t)(p)(u),
\text{error}(	ext{cat}("\text{Initialization type mismatch: }")(d)(d_1))))

\text{match-types}(d_1,d_2) = \text{(case tag}(d_1)\)
\(*\text{BOOL}^*, *\text{BIT}^*, *\text{REAL}^*, *\text{TIME}^*, *\text{ENUMTYPE}^* ) \rightarrow d_1 = \text{get-base-type}(d_2),\)
\(*\text{INT}^*, *\text{INT\_TYPE}^* ) \land \text{match-integer-types}(d_1)(\text{get-base-type}(d_2)),\)
\(*\text{SUBTYPE}^* \rightarrow \text{match-types}(\text{get-base-type}(d_1), \text{get-base-type}(d_2)),\)
\(*\text{ARRAY\_TYPE}^* \rightarrow \text{tag}(d_1) = *\text{ARRAY\_TYPE}^* \land \text{match-array-type-names}(d_1,d_2),\)
\(*\text{RECORD\_TYPE}^* \rightarrow \text{tag}(d_1) = *\text{RECORD\_TYPE}^* \land \text{null}(\text{set-difference}(\text{filter-components}(\text{type}(d_1))))(\text{filter-components}(\text{type}(d_2))))),\)
\text{OTHERWISE} \rightarrow \text{match-type-names}(\text{idf}(d_1),\text{idf}(d_2))

\text{match-integer-types}(d_1,d_2) = \text{idf}(d_1) = \text{UNIVERSAL\_INTEGER} \lor \text{idf}(d_2) = \text{UNIVERSAL\_INTEGER}

\text{get-base-type}(d) = (\text{tag}(d) = *\text{SUBTYPE}^* \rightarrow \text{base-type}(d),d)\)

\text{match-array-type-names}(d_1,d_2)
= \text{let idf}_1 = \text{hd}(d_1)\)
\text{and idf}_2 = \text{hd}(d_2)\) in
\text{(cons}(\text{idf}_1,\text{cons}(\text{idf}_2)\rightarrow \text{match-type-names}(\text{hd}(\text{idf}_1),\text{hd}(\text{idf}_2)),\)
\text{cons}(\text{idf}_1)\rightarrow \text{match-type-names}(\text{hd}(\text{idf}_1),\text{idf}_2),\)
\text{cons}(\text{idf}_2)\rightarrow \text{match-type-names}(\text{idf}_1,\text{hd}(\text{idf}_2)),\)
\text{match-type-names}(\text{idf}_1,\text{idf}_2))\)

\text{match-type-names}(d_1,d_2)
= \text{id}_1 = *\text{ANONYMOUS}^* \lor \text{id}_2 = *\text{ANONYMOUS}^*\)

\text{array-size}(d)
= (\text{ub}(d)\land \text{lb}(d))\)
\rightarrow \text{let lbound} = \text{hd}(\text{tl}(\text{lb}(d)))\)
\text{and ubound} = \text{hd}(\text{tl}(\text{ub}(d)))\) in
\text{(ubound-lboun)+1,}\)
\(-1)\)

\text{filter-components}(\text{components})
= (\text{null}(\text{components})\rightarrow \epsilon,\)
\text{let component} = \text{hd}(\text{components})\) in
\text{cons}(\text{hd}(\text{component}),\text{second}(\text{component})),\)
\text{filter-components}(\text{tl}(\text{components})))\)

An object declaration declares a list of identifiers to be of the type given by the type-mark, which must be the name of a type that has already been entered in the visible part of the TSE. The identifiers must be distinct. The first of these identifiers is used in error messages.
If the identifiers are being declared as constants but no initialization expression is present, then an UNINITIALIZED-CONSTANT error is reported. If constants are being declared, then their type is a value type; variables and signals have reference types. If variables or signals are being declared without an initialization expression, then the identifiers are entered into the TSE with an undefined initial value *UNDEF* by the function enter-objects, whose operation is explained below. If present, the initialization expression is checked and its type compared to the value type of the declared identifiers. If these types are not equal, then an initialization type mismatch is reported. If the identifiers are being declared as constants, they are entered into the TSE with an initial value equal to the (static) value of the initialization expression.

The function enter-objects enters into the TSE a scalar descriptor for each of a list of identifiers. Duplicate declarations are detected. The descriptors are created from (1) the identifiers and (2) a list of remaining field values input to enter-objects.

The function name-type returns the type (consisting of a type mode and a type descriptor) of a reference (ref). In Phase 1, refs are essentially sequences of identifiers and expression lists; refs must begin with an identifier. As name-type processes a ref, it carries along (in parameters name and w, respectively) the remainder of the ref to be processed and the type to be computed for that portion of the original ref processed thus far. During this processing, special type modes that are identifier lists may be used to validate accesses to items declared inside packages or subprograms; validate-access checks these accesses. The function list-type returns the list of the types of its components; when a list is used as an actual parameter list in a subprogram call, compatible-par-types checks whether the types of this list’s components are compatible with (not necessarily equal to) the types of the corresponding formal parameters of the subprogram.

(DT6) DT SLCDEC object-class id+ slice-name opt-expr ] (p)(vis)(u)(t)
= let (type-mark,discrete-range) = slice-name in
  let q = find-progunit-env(t)(p) in
  let d = (q)(*UNIT*) in
  let tg = tag(d) in
  (case object-class
      (CONST,SYSGEN ) => lookup-type(type-mark)(p)(z)(t),
      VAR
        => (case tg
             (*PACKAGE*,*ENTITY*,*ARCHITECTURE*)
               => error
               (cat("Illegal VARIABLE declaration in ")(tg)
                (" context: ")(decl)),
             OTHERWISE => lookup-type(type-mark)(p)(z)(t)),
      SIG
        => (case tg
             (*PROCESS*,*PROCEDURE*,*FUNCTION*)
               => error
               (cat("Illegal SIGNAL declaration in ")(tg)(" context: ")(decl)),
             OTHERWISE => lookup-type(type-mark)(p)(z)(t)),
      OTHERWISE
        => error(cat("Illegal object class in declaration: ")(decl)))
where
  z = λd.let type = (object-class = CONST => mk-type((CONST VAL ))(d),
mk-type(mk-tmode(object-class)(REF))(d)) in
process-sldcdec(id\(\uparrow\))(id\(\uparrow\))(discrete-range)(opt-expr)(p)(vis)(u)(t)
→ error(cat("Duplicate array declaration: ")(p)(id₁)),
let d₂ = <$OBJECT*, p, vis, new-type, UNDEF*, ε> in
let t₂ = enter(t₁)(p)(id₁)(d₂) in
enter-array-objects
(id(id*))(array-type-name)(tmode)(field-values)(t₂)(p)(vis)(u))

check-array-aggregate(expr)(p)(v)(t)
= let (tg, expr*) = expr in
  {tg ≠ BITSTR ∧ tg ≠ STR
   → error(cat("Improper array initialization aggregate: ")(expr)),
   let expr₁ = hd(expr*) in
   RT [ expr₁ ] (p)(k)(t)
   where k = \(w₁, e₁), t, check-exprs(w₁)(tl(expr*))(p)(v)(t))

check-exprs(w)(expr*)(p)(v)(t)
= (null(expr*) → v(w),
  let expr = hd(expr*) in
  RT [ expr ] (p)(k)(t)
  where
  k = \(w₁, e₁), t,
  \(w₁ ≠ w → "Nonuniform array aggregate ",
  check-exprs(w)(tl(expr*))(p)(v)(t))

A declaration of a slice of a (previously defined) array type is a special form of object declaration for arrays of anonymous type. Because a declaration of a list of identifiers is considered to be an abbreviated representation of the sequence of corresponding declarations of each of the individual identifiers in the list, the (anonymous) type of each of the declared identifiers is distinct. Each of these distinct anonymous array types is given a distinct, new, system-generated name in Phase 1 of the Stage 3 VHDL translator (via the function new-array-type-name), and corresponding distinct type descriptors are entered into the TSE. If present, the initialization part of the declaration is a list of scalar expressions.

The elaboration and checking of a slice declaration begins in the same way as for a scalar declaration. The slice bound expressions are then evaluated and checked to ensure that both are integers. If the initialization part is absent, then descriptors for the declared array identifiers, together with the descriptors for the corresponding anonymous array types, are entered into the environment by enter-array-objects.

If the initialization part is present, then it is first processed by check-array-aggregate, which invokes check-exprs to ensure that each element of the initialization part has the same (value) type; check-aggregate returns this type, which is then compared to the array's declared value type. Finally, enter-array-objects is invoked to enter the descriptors for the declared arrays into the environment.

Refer also semantic equation DT8, shown below.

(DT8) DT [ ETDEC id id* ] (p)(vis)(u)(t)
= let field-values₁ = <$ENUMTYPE*, p, vis, mk-enumlit(hd(id*)),
  mk-enumlit(last(id*)), id*> in
  (check-enum-lits(t)(p)(id)(id*)
   → enter-objects((id))(field-values₁)(t)(p)(u₁),
nil)
  where
\[ u_1 = \lambda l_1. \text{let } d = \text{cons(id, field-values)} \in \]
\[ \text{let field-values } = <e, \text{*ENUMELT*, p, vis}_1, \]
\[ \text{mk-type(CONST VAL)}(d) \in \]
\[ \text{enter-objects(id')}(\text{field-values})(t_i)(p)(u) \]

\begin{align*}
\text{check-enum-lits(t)(p)(id)(id')} \\
= (\text{null(id')} \to \text{tt}, \\
\text{let id}_1 = \text{hd(id')} \in \\
(\text{lookup(t)(p)(id)_1} = \text{*UNBOUND*} \to \text{check-enum-lits(t)(p)(id)(tl(id'))}), \\
\text{error} \\
(\text{cat("Illegal overloading for enumeration literal: ")}(id_1) \\
(" in enumeration type: ")($p(id)$)))
\end{align*}

An enumeration type declaration causes corresponding enumeration type descriptors to be entered into the TSE. At the same time, descriptors for the individual elements of the enumeration type are entered into the TSE; these elements are treated as constants.

\[(DT8) \text{DT [ ATDEC id discrete-range type-mark } (p)(vis)(u)(t) \\
= \text{lookup-type(type-mark)(p)(z)(t)} \\
\text{where} \\
z = \lambda d. \text{let } (\text{direction, expr}_1, \text{expr}_2) = \text{discrete-range in} \\
\text{let array-type-desc } = \text{array-type-desc} \\
(id)(e)(p)(vis)(direction) \\
((\text{direction } = \text{TO} \\
\to \text{second(EX [ expr}_1 (p)(t)),} \\
\text{second(EX [ expr}_2 (p)(t)))}) \\
((\text{direction } = \text{TO} \\
\to \text{second(EXT [ expr}_1 (p)(t)),} \\
\text{second(EXT [ expr}_2 (p)(t)))}(d) \in \\
\text{attributes-low-high} \\
((id,expr_1,expr_2,array-type-desc,(UNIVERSAL.INTEGER)))(p) \\
(vis)(u)(t) \\
\text{attributes-low-high(id,expr_1,expr_2,type-desc,attribute-type-mark)(p)(vis)(u)(t) \\
= \text{let } \text{decl}_1 = (\text{DEC.SYSGEN}_{(\text{mk-tick-low(id)}),\text{attribute-type-mark,expr}_1}) \\
\text{and } \text{decl}_2 = (\text{DEC.SYSGEN}_{(\text{mk-tick-high(id)}),\text{attribute-type-mark,expr}_2}) \in \\
\text{enter-objects(id)}(\text{tl(type-desc)})(t)(p)(u) \\
\text{where } u_1 = \lambda l_1. \text{DT [ } \text{decl}_1 \in (p)(vis)(u_2)(t_1) \\
\text{where } u_2 = \lambda l_2. \text{DT [ } \text{decl}_2 \in (p)(vis)(u)(t_2) \\
\text{mk-tick-low(id) } = \text{catenate(id,"LOW") \\
\text{mk-tick-high(id) } = \text{catenate(id,"HIGH")}
\]

An array type declaration causes corresponding array type descriptors to be entered into the TSE. The array type attributes 'low and 'high, representing the lower and upper bounds, respectively, are declared as system-generated identifiers.

\[(DT9) \text{DT [ PACKAGE id decl' opt-id } (p)(vis)(u)(t) \\
= (t(p)(id) \neq \text{*UNBOUND*} \\
\to \text{error(cat("Duplicate package declaration: ")($p(id)$)),} \\
(\neg\text{null(opt-id)} \land \text{opt-id } \neq \text{id} \\
\to \text{error} \\
(\text{cat("Package ")($p(id)$)}(" ended with incorrect identifier: "))
\]

63
(opt-id)).
let \( d = \langle \epsilon, \text{*PACKAGE*}, p, \text{vis}, \epsilon \rangle \) in
let \( t_1 = \text{enter}(t)(p)(id)(d) \) in
let \( t_2 = \text{enter}(\text{extend}(t_1)(p)(id))(\text{vis}(p)(id))(\text{*UNIT*})(\langle \epsilon, \text{*PACKAGE*} \rangle) \) in
let \( t_3 = \text{enter}(t_2)(\text{vis}(p)(id))(\text{*USED*})(\langle \epsilon, \epsilon, \epsilon \rangle) \) in
let \( t_4 = \text{enter}(t_3)(\text{vis}(p)(id))(\text{*IMPT*})(\langle \epsilon, \epsilon, \epsilon \rangle) \) in
\( u_1(t_4) \)
where \( u_1 = \lambda t. \text{DT} \left[ \text{decl*} \right] (\text{vis}(p)(id))(t)(u)(t) \) 

(DT10) \text{DT} \left[ \text{PACKAGEBODY} \right] \text{id decl* opt-id \ (p)(vis)(u)(t) \ = \ text{let} \ d = t(p)(id) \text{ in} \right.
\( \left( d = \text{*UNBOUND*} \rightarrow \text{error(cat("Missing package declaration: ")}(\text{vis}(p)(id))), \right. \)
\( \text{tag}(d) \neq \text{*PACKAGE*} \rightarrow \text{error(cat("Not a package declaration: ")}(\text{vis}(p)(id))), \)
\( \neg \text{null}(pbody(d)) \rightarrow \text{error(cat("Duplicate package body: ")}(\text{vis}(p)(id))), \)
\( \neg \text{null}(\text{opt-id}) \land \text{opt-id} \neq \text{id} \rightarrow \text{error} \)
\( \text{cat("Package body ")}(\text{vis}(p)(id))(" ended with incorrect identifier: ") \)
\( \text{opt-id})), \)
\text{let} \( q = \%\text{(path}(d))(id) \text{ in} \)
\text{let} \( t_1 = \text{enter}(t)(q)(\text{*LAB*})(\langle \epsilon, \epsilon \rangle) \text{ in} \)
\text{let} \( t_2 = \text{enter}(t_1)(p)(id)(\langle \epsilon, \text{*PACKAGE*}, \text{path}(d), \text{exported}(d), \text{*BODY*} \rangle) \text{ in} \)
\text{DT} \left[ \text{decl*} \right] (q)(\text{ff})(u)(t_2) \)

A package is an encapsulated collection of declarations (including other packages) of logically related entities identified by the package's name. A package is generally provided in two parts: the package declaration and the package body. The package declaration provides declarations of those items that are exported (i.e., made visible) by the package. The package body provides the bodies of items whose declarations appear in the package declaration, together with the declarations and bodies of additional items that support the items exported by the package. These latter items are not exported by the package, i.e., they cannot be made visible outside the package. In our implementation, the descriptors of exported and nonexported items alike are entered into the same local environment. The exported field of these descriptors distinguishes between the two kinds of items. If an item can be exported by a USE clause, then the exported field of its descriptor contains \text{tt} (denoting true; if not, then this field contains \text{ff} (false).

The items declared in a package declaration are not directly visible outside the package, but they can be accessed by using a dotted name beginning with the package name, provided that the package name is visible at the point of access. A descriptor for the package declaration is entered into the current environment. In order to encapsulate the items within a package, the resulting TSE is then extended along the current path by an edge labeled with the package name; the new environment is marked (in its \text{*UNIT*} cell) as a package environment. Then the constituent declarations of the package are elaborated and checked in the new environment.

The items declared in a package body are not exported from the package and thus must not be accessible by an extended name. Therefore the exported field of the descriptors for the inaccessible entities must be set to \text{ff}, thus marking them as not exportable.

(DT11) \text{DT} \left[ \text{PROCEDURE} \right] \text{id proc-par-spec* \ (p)(vis)(u)(t) \)
$$\begin{align*}
&= (t(p)(id) \neq \text{*UNBOUND*}) \\
&\quad \rightarrow \text{error}(\text{cat("Duplicate procedure declaration for: ")}(\$p)(id))), \\
&\quad \text{let } p_1 = \%p(id) \text{ in} \\
&\quad \text{let } t_1 = \text{enter(extend}(t)(p)(id))(p_1)(\text{*UNIT* })(<\varepsilon, \text{PROCEDURE* }>) \text{ in} \\
&\quad \text{enter-formal-pars(\text{PROCEDURE* })(proc-par-spec*)(t_1)(p_1)(u_1)} \\
&\quad \text{where} \\
&\quad \quad u_1 = \lambda t_2.\text{let formals} = \text{let id}^+ = \text{collect-fids(proc-par-spec*) in} \\
&\quad \quad \text{collect-formal-pars(id})(t_2)(p_1) \text{ in} \\
&\quad \quad \text{let } d = <\varepsilon, \text{PROCEDURE* }, p, \text{vis}, \\
&\quad \quad ((\text{formals,} \\
&\quad \quad \text{mk-type}((\text{CONST VAL} })(\text{void-type-desc(t)})))(\varepsilon, \varepsilon) \text{ in} \\
&\quad \quad u(\text{enter(t_2)(p)(id)(d)})) \\
&\quad \quad \text{(DT12) DT [ FUNCTION id func-par-spec* type-mark ] (p)(vis)(u)(t)} \\
&\quad \quad \quad = (t(p)(id) \neq \text{*UNBOUND*}) \\
&\quad \quad \quad \rightarrow \text{error}(\text{cat("Duplicate function declaration for: ")}(\$p)(id))), \\
&\quad \quad \quad \text{let } p_1 = \%p(id) \text{ in} \\
&\quad \quad \quad \text{lookup-type(type-mark)(p(z))(t)} \\
&\quad \quad \quad \text{where} \\
&\quad \quad \quad \quad z = \lambda d_1.\text{let } t_1 = \text{enter} \\
&\quad \quad \quad \quad (\text{extend}(t)(p)(id))(p_1)(\text{*UNIT* })(<\varepsilon, \text{FUNCTION* }>) \text{ in} \\
&\quad \quad \quad \quad \text{enter-formal-pars(\text{FUNCTION* })(func-par-spec*)(t_1)(p_1)(u_1)} \\
&\quad \quad \quad \quad \text{where} \\
&\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad u_1 = \lambda t_2.\text{let formals} = \text{let id}^+ = \text{collect-fids} \\
&\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad (\text{func-par-spec*}) \text{ in} \\
&\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{collect-formal-pars} \\
&\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad (id^+)(t_2)(p_1) \text{ in} \\
&\quad \quad \quad \quad \text{let } d = <\varepsilon, \text{FUNCTION* }, p, \text{vis}, \\
&\quad \quad \quad \quad ((\text{formals, mk-type}((\text{VAR VAL} })(d_1)))(\varepsilon, \varepsilon) \text{ in} \\
&\quad \quad \quad \quad u(\text{enter(t_2)(p)(id)(d)})) \\
&\quad \text{enter-formal-pars(tg)(par-spec*)(t)(p)(u)} \\
&\quad = (\text{null(par-spec*)}) \rightarrow u(t), \\
&\quad \quad \text{let par-spec} = \text{hd(par-spec*)} \text{ in} \\
&\quad \quad \text{let (object-class, id^+, mode, type-mark, opt-expr) = par-spec in} \\
&\quad \quad \text{(case tg\n\text{*PROCEDURE*}} \\
&\quad \quad \quad \rightarrow (\text{case object-class} \\
&\quad \quad \quad \text{CONSTR, VAR }) \\
&\quad \quad \quad \rightarrow (\text{case mode} \\
&\quad \quad \quad \text{IN, OUT, INOUT }) \rightarrow \text{lookup-type(type-mark)(p(z))(t),} \\
&\quad \quad \quad \text{OTHERWISE} \\
&\quad \quad \quad \rightarrow \text{error} \\
&\quad \quad \quad \quad (\text{cat("Illegal mode for procedure parameters: ")}(\$p)} \\
&\quad \quad \quad \quad (\text{hd(id^+)}))))}, \\
&\quad \text{OTHERWISE} \\
&\quad \quad \rightarrow \text{error} \\
&\quad \quad \quad (\text{cat("Unimplemented object class ")}(\text{object-class}) \\
&\quad \quad \quad \text{" for procedure parameters: ")}(\$p)(\text{hd(id^+)}))))}, \\
&\text{*FUNCTION*} \\
&\quad \rightarrow (\text{case object-class} \\
&\quad \text{CONSTR} \\
&\quad \rightarrow (\text{case mode} \\
&\quad \text{IN } \rightarrow \text{lookup-type(type-mark)(p(z))(t),} \\
&\quad \text{OTHERWISE} \\
&\quad \rightarrow \text{error} \\
&\quad \quad (\text{cat("Illegal mode for function parameters: ")}(\$p)} \\
&\text{65}
(\text{otherwise})
\begin{align*}
\text{\rightarrow error (cat("Unimplemented object class ") (object-class))}\\
\text{(" for function parameters: ")($p$(\text{hd}^+)))},
\end{align*}
\text{where}
\begin{align*}
z &= \lambda d. \text{let type = (case mode} \\
\text{IN} &= \text{mk-type(mk-tmode(object-class)(\text{VAL }))(d),}\\
\text{OUT} &= \text{mk-type(mk-tmode(object-class)(\text{OUT }))(d),}\\
\text{otherwise} &= \text{mk-type(mk-tmode(object-class)(\text{REF }))(d)} \text{ in} \\
\text{let fv = } <e, ^*\text{OBJECT}^*, p, t, \text{type}, ^*\text{UNDEF}^*, e> \text{ in} \\
\text{enter-objects(id^+)(fv)(t)(p)(u_1)} \\
\text{where } u_1 &= \lambda t. \text{enter-formal-pars(tg)(tl(par-spec'))(t)(p)(u)}
\end{align*}
\text{collect-fids(par-spec')}
\begin{align*}
&= \text{(par-spec') \rightarrow } e, \\
&\quad \text{let par-spec = hd(par-spec') in} \\
&\quad \text{let (object-class, id^+, mode, type-mark, opt-expr) = par-spec in} \\
&\quad \text{append(id^+, collect-fids(tl(par-spec'))))}
\end{align*}
\text{collect-formal-pars(id^')(t)(p)}
\begin{align*}
&= \text{(null(id^+)) \rightarrow } e, \\
&\quad \text{let d = t(p)(hd(id^+)) in} \\
&\quad \text{cons((hd(id^+), type(d)), collect-formal-pars(tl(id^')(t)(p)))}
\end{align*}

Checking a subprogram (procedure or function) declaration first extends the TSE and identifies the new environment at the end of the extended path (in its \text{*UNIT*} cell) as a procedure or function environment. Then descriptors for the subprogram's formal parameters are entered (by \text{enter-formal-pars}) into this new environment. Finally, a descriptor for the subprogram (with a \text{body} field of \text{ff}, indicating that no body for this subprogram has been encountered) is entered into the environment in which the subprogram is declared locally. Procedures are always given a \text{void} return type. The function \text{enter-formal-pars} accepts a tag \text{*PROCEDURE*} or \text{*FUNCTION*} (procedure or function) to enable it to check that the formal parameters are appropriate to the subprogram. For example, functions can have only IN parameters.

\[(\text{DT13}) \text{ DT } [\text{SUBPROGBODY subprog-spec decl* seq-stat* opt-id }] (p)(\text{vis})(u)(t)
\]
\begin{align*}
&= \text{let (tg, id, par-spec', type-mark) = subprog-spec in} \\
&\quad \text{let qname = $p$(id)} \\
&\quad \quad \text{and d = t(p)(id) in} \\
&\quad \quad (d = \text{*UNBOUND*}) \\
&\quad \text{\rightarrow let decl = subprog-spec in} \\
&\quad \quad \text{DT } [\text{decl }] (p)(\text{vis})(u_1)(t) \\
&\quad \quad \text{where} \\
&\quad \quad u_1 = \lambda t. \text{let d = t(p)(id) in} \\
&\quad \quad \quad \text{process-subprog-body} \\
&\quad \quad \quad \quad (t(p)(id)(d)(decl')(seq-stat'))(u), \\
&\quad \quad \quad \quad \neg \text{((tag(d) \in \text{*PROCEDURE*} \text{*FUNCTION*}))} \\
&\quad \quad \quad \quad \rightarrow \text{error(cat(qname)(" is not a subprogram specification"))}, \\
&\quad \quad \quad \quad (tg = \text{PROCEDURE} \wedge \text{tag(d)} = \text{*FUNCTION*}) \\
&\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \vee (tg = \text{FUNCTION} \wedge \text{tag(d)} = \text{*PROCEDURE*}) \\
&\quad \quad \quad \quad \rightarrow \text{error(cat("Wrong kind of subprogram body: ")((qname)),} \\
&\quad \quad \quad \quad \neg \text{null(body(d))} \rightarrow \text{error(cat("Duplicate subprogram body: ")((qname)),} \\
\]
\end{align*}

66
null(opt-id) \& opt-id \neq id
\rightarrow error
\quad (\text{cat}(\text{"Subprogram body "})(qname))
\quad (\text{"ended with incorrect identifier "})(opt-id)),
\begin{align*}
\text{let forms} & = \text{let id}^+ = \text{collect-fds(par-spec\text{"-*") in}} \\
& \quad \text{collect-formal-pars(id^+)(t)(\%)(p)(id)) in} \\
& \quad \text{(forms \neq \text{pars(hd(signatures(d))})} \\
\end{align*}
\rightarrow error
\quad (\text{cat}(\text{"Nonconforming formal parameters for subprogram: "})(qname)),
\begin{align*}
\text{lookup-type(type-mark)(p)(z)(t)} \\
\text{where} \\
& \quad z = \lambda d_1.(d_1 \neq \text{tdesc(extract-rtype(d))}) \\
\end{align*}
\rightarrow error
\quad (\text{cat}(\text{"Unequal result types for subprogram: "}))
\quad (\text{qname}),
\quad \text{process-subprog-body(t)(p)(id)(d)(decl\text{"-})(seq-stat\text{"-})(u)))
\end{align*}
\begin{align*}
\text{process-subprog-body(t)(p)(id)(d)(decl\text{"-})(seq-stat\text{"-})(u))} \\
\text{= let } p_1 = \%\%(p)(id) \text{ in} \\
\text{let } t_1 = \text{enter(t)(p)(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%(\%\%
\[
= \text{check-pkg-names}(\text{dotted-name}^{+})(\epsilon)(p)(\text{vis})(j)(t)
\]
where
\[
j = \lambda \text{pkg-qualified-names}.
\]
\[
\text{let } \text{pkg-qnames} = \text{remove-enclosing-pkgs}(p)(t)(\text{pkg-qualified-names}) \text{ in }
\]
\[
\text{let } \text{local-pkgs-used} = \text{third}(t)(\text{*USED*}) \text{ in }
\]
\[
\text{let } t_1 = \text{enter}(t)(p)(\text{*USED*})
\]
\[
((\epsilon, \text{pkg-qnames} \cup \text{local-pkgs-used})) \text{ in }
\]
\[
\text{let } t_2 = \text{let } d = t(p)(\text{*IMPT*}) \text{ in }
\]
\[
\text{let } \text{qname-list} = \text{third}(d)
\]
\[
\text{and } \text{id-list} = \text{fourth}(d) \text{ in }
\]
\[
\text{import-qualified-names}
\]
\[
(\text{pkg-qnames})(\text{qname-list})(\text{id-list})(p)(t_1) \text{ in }
\]
\[
u(t_2)
\]
\[
\text{check-pkg-names}(\text{dotted-name}^{*})(\text{pkg-qualified-names})(p)(\text{vis})(j)(t)
\]
\[
= (\text{null}(\text{dotted-name}^{*}) - j(\text{pkg-qualified-names}),
\]
\[
\text{let } \text{dn} = \text{hd}(\text{dotted-name}^{*}) \text{ in }
\]
\[
\text{let } \text{suffix} = \text{last}(\text{dn}) \text{ in }
\]
\[
(\text{suffix} \neq \text{ALL})
\]
\[
\rightarrow \text{error}(\text{cat}(\text{"Selected name in USE clause must end with suffix ALL: "})(\text{dn})),
\]
\[
\text{name-type}(\text{rest}(\text{dn}))\epsilon(p)(t)(v)
\]
\[
\text{where}
\]
\[
v = \lambda w. \text{let } d = w(\text{desc}(w)) \text{ in }
\]
\[
(\text{tag}(d) \neq \text{*PACKAGE*})
\]
\[
\rightarrow \text{error}(\text{cat}(\text{"Non-package name in USE clause: "})(\text{name})
\]
\[
(\text{d}))
\]
\[
\text{check-pkg-names}
\]
\[
(tl(\text{dotted-name}^{*}))(\text{cons}(\text{path}(\text{d}))(\text{idf}(\text{d})),\text{pkg-qualified-names})
\]
\[
(p)(\text{vis})(j)(t))
\]
\[
= (\text{null}(p) - \text{pkg-set},
\]
\[
\text{let } d = t(p)(\text{*UNIT*}) \text{ in }
\]
\[
(d = \text{*UNBOUND*} \rightarrow \text{remove-enclosing-pkgs}(\text{rest}(p))(t)(\text{pkg-set}),
\]
\[
(\text{third}(d) = \text{*PACKAGE*})
\]
\[
\rightarrow \text{remove-enclosing-pkgs}(\text{rest}(p))(t)(\text{set-difference}(\text{pkg-set}))(p)),
\]
\[
\text{remove-enclosing-pkgs}(\text{rest}(p))(t)(\text{pkg-set}))
\]
\[
= (\text{pkg-qualified-names} = \epsilon
\]
\[
\rightarrow \text{enter}(t)(p)(\text{*IMPT*})((\epsilon, \text{item-qualified-names}, \text{ids-used})),
\]
\[
\text{let } \text{pkg-qn} = \text{hd}(\text{pkg-qualified-names}) \text{ in }
\]
\[
\text{let } \text{pkg-env} = t(\text{pkg-qn}) \text{ in }
\]
\[
\text{let } \text{exported-qnames} = \text{export-qualified-names}(\text{pkg-env})(\epsilon) \text{ in }
\]
\[
\text{let } \text{local-env} = t(p) \text{ in }
\]
\[
\text{let } (\text{qname}^{*}, \text{id}^{*}) = \text{import-legal}
\]
\[
(\text{exported-qnames})(\text{item-qualified-names})(\text{ids-used})
\]
\[
(\text{local-env}) \text{ in }
\]
\[
\text{import-qualified-names}(\text{tl}(\text{pkg-qualified-names}))(\text{qname}^{*})(\text{id}^{*})(p)(t)
\]
\[
= (\text{null}(\text{exported-qnames}) \rightarrow (\text{qname-list}, \text{id-list}),
\]
\[
\text{let } \text{qname} = \text{hd}(\text{exported-qnames}) \text{ in }
\]
\[
\text{let } \text{id} = \text{last}(\text{qname}) \text{ in }
\]
\[
\text{let } \text{remaining-exported-qnames} = \text{tl}(\text{exported-qnames}) \text{ in }
\]
\[
(\text{id} \in \text{id-list}
\]
\]
let qn = simple-name-match(id)(qname-list) in
\( (null(qn) \rightarrow \epsilon, \) 
  (import-legal(remaining-exported-qnames)(qname-list)(id-list)(env), 
  import-legal 
  (remaining-exported-qnames)(set-difference(qname-list)\((qn)\)) 
  (id-list)(env)), 
let d = env(id) in 
(d = *UNBOUND* 
  import-legal 
  (remaining-exported-qnames)(cons(qname,qname-list)) 
  (cons(id,id-list))(env), 
import-legal 
  (remaining-exported-qnames)(qname-list)(cons(id,id-list))(env))))

simple-name-match(id)(qname*)
= (null(qname*) \rightarrow \epsilon, 
  (id = last(hd(qname*)) \rightarrow hd(qname*), simple-name-match(id)(tl(qname*))))

export-qualified-names(env)(qualified-names)
= (null(env) \rightarrow qualified-names, 
let d = hd(env) in 
  let id = id(d) in 
  (case id 
    (*UNIT*, *LAB*, *USED*, *IMPT*) 
    \rightarrow export-qualified-names(tl(env))(qualified-names), 
    OTHERWISE \rightarrow (exported(d) 
      \rightarrow export-qualified-names(tl(env))(cons(%(path(d))(id),qualified-names)), 
      export-qualified-names(tl(env))(qualified-names))))

A USE clause is a declaration that makes items declared in a package specification visible at the location of the USE clause. Each of the dotted names in a USE clause, neglecting the (obligatory) suffix ALL, must denote the name of a package. In essence, a USE clause combines the exported environments associated with its named packages both with each other and with the local environment (among whose declarations the USE clause appears). Such a combination of environments may introduce conflicts, since there may be several different declarations of an object of the same name in the packages (as well as one locally). Therefore, certain constraints must govern how environments are combined:

1. If an object \( x \) is declared locally, then no declarations of \( x \) may be imported to the local environment by the USE clause.

2. If an object \( x \) is declared in more than one of the packages named in the USE clause, then none of these declarations of \( x \) may be imported to the local environment by the USE clause, even if \( x \) is not declared locally.

These constraints ensure that (1) no local declaration is masked by an imported one, and (2) no duplicate or conflicting declarations are imported.

USE clauses are treated by process-use-clause, which assumes that all the USE clauses in a program unit's declarative part are located together at the end of that declarative part.
This restriction on the location and grouping of USE clauses enables a determination of those items imported into a local environment to be made once and for all by the time the unit’s declarative part has been processed. This ensures that the list of items imported into an environment (stored in its *IMPT* cell) need not vary in Phase 2, thereby ensuring that the entire TSE is fixed throughout Phase 2. If declarations other than USE clauses were allowed to appear between USE clauses, then the set of importable items may change before and after such interposed declarations, requiring a dynamic evaluation of the import list during Phase 2. We feel that such generality is unnecessary, because the names of items can always be changed so that their interposed declarations can be moved in front of the group of USE clauses.

First, the list of names appearing in this USE clause (with duplicates removed) is given to process-use-clause. Then these names are checked by check-pkg-names to ensure that they denote packages; a list of fully qualified package names is returned. The names of packages that enclose packages in this list are removed by remove-enclosing-packages. The (set-theoretic) union of the resulting set of package names (called pkg-qnames) and the set of names of packages already appearing in USE clauses in this declarative part (stored in the *USED* cell of this environment) is computed (in order to avoid duplication); the resulting set of package names is entered back into the *USED* cell. Next, the current set of fully qualified names of items imported into this environment (qname-list) is retrieved from its *IMPT* cell. A separate list of simple identifiers (id-list) is also maintained in the *IMPT* cell; this list is used to prevent illegal importations into the current environment. Then pkg-qnames, qname-list, and id-list are passed to import-qualified-names, which adds the fully qualified names of those items that can be legally imported into the local environment by the USE clause being processed. The auxiliary functions export-qualified-names and import-legal are used by import-qualified-names.

(DT15) DT [ STDEC id type-mark opt-discrete-range ] (p)(vis)(u)(t) = lookup-type(type-mark)(p)(z)(t) where z = \lambda d.let base-type-desc = get-base-type(d) in (null(opt-discrete-range)) → let field-values = <e,*SUBTYPE*,p,vis,type-tick-low(d),type-tick-high(d),base-type-desc> in attributes((id,e,d,field-values))(p)(vis)(u)(t), let (direction,expr1,expr2) = opt-discrete-range in RT [ expr1 ] (p)(k1)(t) where k1 = \lambda (w1,e1),t. RT [ expr2 ] (p)(k2)(t) where k2 = \lambda (w2,e2),t. (match-types(tdesc(w1),base-type-desc) ∧ match-types(tdesc(w2),base-type-desc)) → let field-values = <e,*SUBTYPE*,p,vis, (direction = TO (e1 = *UNDEF*) → second (EX [ expr1 ] (p)(t)), (NUM ,e1)), (e2 = *UNDEF*)}
→ second
(\texttt{EX} [ expr_2 ]
  (p)(t)),
(NUM , e_2)),
(direction = TO
→ (e_2 = *UNDEF*)
→ second
(\texttt{EX} [ expr_2 ]
  (p)(t)),
(NUM , e_2)),
(e_1 = *UNDEF*)
→ second
(\texttt{EX} [ expr_1 ]
  (p)(t)),
(NUM , e_1)), base-type-desc \>

attributes
((id,
  (direction = TO \rightarrow expr_1,
   expr_2),
  (direction = TO \rightarrow expr_2,
   expr_1),d,field-values))(p)
(vis)(u)(t),
error
(cat("Range constraint for subtype incompatible with base type: "))
(base-type-desc)(tdesc(w_1))
(tdesc(w_2))(decl))

\begin{verbatim}
attributes(id,lower-bound,upper-bound,d,field-values)(p)(vis)(u)(t)
= let decl_1 = (\texttt{DEC \_SYSGEN} . (mk-tick-low(id)),(idf(d)),lower-bound)
  and decl_2 = (\texttt{DEC \_SYSGEN} . (mk-tick-high(id)),(idf(d)),upper-bound) in
  enter-objects((id))(field-values)(t)(p)(u_1)
  where u_1 = \lambda_t_1.\texttt{DT} [ decl_1 ] (p)(vis)(u_2)(t_1)
  where u_2 = \lambda_t_2.\texttt{DT} [ decl_2 ] (p)(vis)(u)(t_2)
\end{verbatim}

Static semantic analysis of a subtype declaration involves making certain that the lower
and upper bounds of the range constraint are compatible with the subtype’s base type;
declaring the ’low and ’high attributes (representing these bounds) as system-generated
identifiers; and entering a subtype descriptor in the TSE.

(\texttt{DT16} \texttt{DT} [ ITDEC id discrete-range ] (p)(vis)(u)(t)
= let parent-type-desc = univint-type-desc(t) in
  let (direction,expr_1,expr_2) = discrete-range in
  \texttt{RT} [ expr_1 ] (p)(k_1)(t)
  where
  k_1 = \lambda(w_1,e_1),t.
  \texttt{RT} [ expr_2 ] (p)(k_2)(t)
  where
  k_2 = \lambda(w_2,e_2),t.
  (e_1 = *UNDEF* \lor e_2 = *UNDEF*)
  \rightarrow error
  (cat("Non-static bound in range constraint: "))
  (decl)),
  (match-types(tdesc(w_1),parent-type-desc)
    \land match-types(tdesc(w_2),parent-type-desc)
  \rightarrow let field-values = <e,*\texttt{INT\_TYPE}*,p,vis,
(direction = TO
  → (NUM, e1),
  (NUM, e2)),
(direction = TO
  → (NUM, e2),
  (NUM, e1)),parent-type-desc> in
attributes
  ((id, (direction = TO → expr1, expr2),
  (direction = TO → expr2, expr1),parent-type-desc,field-values))
(p)(visi)(u)(t),

error
  (cat("Incompatible range constraint for integer type: ")
  (tdesc(w1))(tdesc(w2))(decl))

Static semantic analysis of an integer definition type involves making certain that the lower
and upper bounds of the range constraint are static expressions compatible with the integer
type’s parent type (UNIVERSAL_INTEGER); declaring the ’low and ’high attributes (rep-
resenting these bounds) as system-generated identifiers; and entering an integer definition
type descriptor in the TSE.

6.5.6 Concurrent Statements

(CST0) CST [] ε [] (p)(u)(t) = u(t)

(CST1) CST [] con-stat con-stat* [] (p)(u)(t)
  = CST [] con-stat [] (p)(u)(t)
  where u1 = λt.CST [] con-stat* [] (p)(u)(t)

Concurrent statements are statically checked in the textual order of their appearance in the
hardware description.

(CST2) CST [] PROCESS id ref* decl* seq-stat* opt-id [] (p)(u)(t)
  = let q = find-architecture-env(t)(p) in
    let labels = third(t(q)(*LAB* ))
    (id ∈ labels → error(cat("Duplicate process label: ")(q)(id))),
    let t1 = enter(t(q)(*LAB* ))((ε,cons(id,labels))) in
    (null(opt-id)∧ opt-id ≠ id
    → error
      (cat("PROCESS statement ")(id)
       (" ended with incorrect identifier: ")(opt-id)),
    let t2 = enter(t1)(q)(id) (<ε,*PROCESSNAME*,p,ref>) in
    let p1 = %p(id) in
    let t3 = enter(extend(t2)(p)(id))(p1)(*UNIT* ) (<ε,*PROCESS*> ) in
    let t4 = enter(t3)(p1)(*LAB* ) (<ε,ε>) in
    let t5 = enter(t4)(p1)(*USED* ) (<ε,ε>) in
    let t6 = enter(t5)(p1)(*IMPT* ) (<ε,ε>) in
    let t7 = enter(t6)(p1)(*SENS* ) (<ε,ε>) in
    SLT [] ref* [] (p1)(u2)(t)
    where u2 = λt.DT [] decl* [] (p1)(tt)(u1)(t)
    where u1 = λt.SST [] seq-stat* [] (p1)(u)(t))

find-architecture-env(t)(p)
  = (null(p)∨ tag(t(p)(*UNIT* ))= *ARCHITECTURE* → p,
     find-architecture-env(t)(rest(p)))

72
(CST3) CST\[\text{SEL-SIGASSN}\ \text{atmark delay-type id expr ref selected-waveform}^+\]\(\text{(p)(u)(t)}\)
\[\text{let} \ \text{expr}^+ = \text{cons}\text{(expr,}\]
\[\text{collect-expressions-from-selected-waveforms}\]
\[\text{(selected-waveform}^+)\text{)}\text{ in}\]
\[\text{let} \ \text{ref}^+ = \text{delete-duplicates}\]
\[\text{(collect-signals-from-expr-list(expr)\text{(t)(p)(e)}) in}\]
\[\text{let} \ \text{case-alt}^+ = \text{construct-case-alternatives}\]
\[\text{(ref)(delay-type)(selected-waveform}^+)\text{)}\text{ in}\]
\[\text{let} \ \text{case-stat} = (\text{CASE} ,\text{atmark,expr,case-alt}^+) \text{ in}\]
\[\text{let} \ \text{process-stat} = (\text{PROCESS id,ref}^+\epsilon,(case-stat)_id) \text{ in}\]
\[\text{CST} \[\text{process-stat}\]\(\text{(p)(u)(t)}\)

\[\text{collect-expressions-from-selected-waveforms}\text{(selected-waveform}^+)\]
\[= (\text{null}\text{(selected-waveform}^+)\text{)}\rightarrow \epsilon,\]
\[\text{let} \ \text{selected-waveform} = \text{hd}\text{(selected-waveform}^+)\text{ in}\]
\[\text{let} \ \text{waveform} = \text{second}\text{(selected-waveform)}\]
\[\text{and} \ \text{discrete-range}^+ = \text{third}\text{(selected-waveform)} \text{ in}\]
\[\text{let} \ \text{transaction-exprs} = \text{collect-transaction-expressions}\text{(second(waveform)}\text{)}\text{ in}\]
\[\text{nconc}\]
\[\text{(transaction-exprs,}\]
\[\text{cons}\text{(second\text{(discrete-range}^+)\text{)},}\]
\[\text{cons}\text{(third\text{(discrete-range}^+)\text{),}}\]
\[\text{collect-expressions-from-selected-waveforms}\]
\[\text{(tl\text{(selected-waveform}^+)\text{))))}}\]

\[\text{collect-transaction-expressions}\text{(trans}^+)\]
\[= (\text{null}\text{(trans}^+)\text{)}\rightarrow \epsilon,\]
\[\text{let} \ \text{transaction} = \text{hd}\text{(trans}^+) \text{ in}\]
\[\text{cons}\text{(second\text{(transaction),collect-transaction-expressions}(tl\text{(trans}^+)\text{))))}}\]

\[\text{collect-signals-from-expr-list}\text{(expr}^+)\text{(t)(p)(signal-refs)}\]
\[= (\text{null}\text{(expr}^+)\text{)}\rightarrow \text{signal-refs,}\]
\[\text{let} \ \text{expr} = \text{hd}\text{(expr}^+) \text{ in}\]
\[\text{collect-signals-from-expr}\]
\[\text{(expr)\text{(t)(p)(collect-signals-from-expr-list}(\text{tl}\text{(expr}^+)\text{))(t)(p)(signal-refs))\text{)}}\]

\[\text{collect-signals-from-expr}\text{(expr)\text{(t)(p)(signal-refs)}\]
\[= (\neg\text{cons}\text{(expr)}\rightarrow \text{signal-refs,}\]
\[\text{is-ref}^?\text{(expr)}\]
\[\rightarrow \text{let} \ d = \text{lookup-desc-for-ref}\text{(expr)\text{(p)(t) in}}\]
\[\text{(tag}(d)\text{)=*OBJECT* AND is-sig?\text{(type}(d))\}
\[\rightarrow \text{cons}\text{(expr,}\]
\[\text{(cons}\text{(second}\text{(expr)}\})\]
\[\rightarrow \text{collect-signals-from-expr-list}\text{(second}\text{(expr)}\text{(t)(p)(signal-refs,}\]
\[\text{collect-signals-from-expr\text{(second}\text{(expr)\text{(t)(p)(signal-refs))},}\]
\[\text{(cons}\text{(second}\text{(expr)}\})\]
\[\rightarrow \text{collect-signals-from-expr-list}\text{(second}\text{(expr)}\text{(t)(p)(signal-refs,}\]
\[\text{collect-signals-from-expr\text{(second}\text{(expr)\text{(t)(p)(signal-refs))},}\]
\[\text{is-paggr}^?\text{(expr)}\]
\[\rightarrow \text{collect-signals-from-expr-list}\text{(second}\text{(expr)\text{(t)(p)(signal-refs,}\]
\[\text{is-unary-op?\text{(hd}\text{(expr))}}\]
\[\rightarrow \text{collect-signals-from-expr\text{(second}\text{(expr)\text{(t)(p)(signal-refs,}\]
\[\text{is-binary-op?\text{(hd}\text{(expr))\text{V is-relational-op?\text{(hd}\text{(expr)\)}}}}\]
\[\rightarrow \text{collect-signals-from-expr}\]
\[\text{(second}\text{(expr)\text{(t)(p)}}\]
\[\text{(collect-signals-from-expr\text{(third}\text{(expr)\text{(t)(p)(signal-refs,}\]
\[\text{collect-signals-from-expr-list}\text{(expr)\text{(t)(p)(signal-refs))}}\]

73
lookup-desc-for-ref(ref)(p)(t)
  = let name = second(ref) in
     let id⁺ = (cons(last(name)) → rest(name), name) in
     let q = access(rest(id⁺))(t)(p) in
     lookup-desc-on-path(t)(q)(last(id⁺))

lookup-desc-on-path(t)(p)(id)
  = let d = t(p)(id) in
     (d = *UNBOUND* → lookup-desc-on-path(t)(rest(p))(id), d)

access(id⁺)(t)(p)
  = (null(id⁺) → p, id = hd(id⁺) in
     let d = lookup(t)(p)(id) in
     (d = *UNBOUND* → error(cat("Unbound identifier: ")(id)),
                  access(tl(id⁺))(t)(%\(\text{path}(d))(\text{idf}(d))))

construct-case-alternatives(ref)(delay-type)(selected-waveform*)
  = (null(selected-waveform*) → ε, let selected-waveform = hd(selected-waveform*) in
     let waveform = second(selected-waveform)
     and discrete-range⁺ = third(selected-waveform) in
     let sig-assn-stat = (SIGASSN,(AT,mk-atmark()),delay-type,ref,waveform) in
     let case-alt = (CASECHOICE,discrete-range⁺,(sig-assn-stat)) in
     cons(case-alt,
         construct-case-alternatives(ref)(delay-type)(tl(selected-waveform*))))

(CST4) CST [ COND-SIGASSN atmark delay-type id ref cond-waveform* waveform ] (p)(u)(t)
  = let expr* = nconc
    (collect-expressions-from-conditional-waveforms
     (cond-waveform*),
      collect-transaction-expressions(second(waveform))) in
    let ref* = delete-duplicates
    (collect-signals-from-expr-list(expr*)(t)(p)(ε)) in
    (null(cond-waveform*)
     → let sig-assn-stat = (SIGASSN,(AT,mk-atmark()),delay-type,ref,waveform) in
      let process-stat = (PROCESS,id,ref*,ε,(sig-assn-stat),id) in
      CST [ process-stat ] (p)(u)(t),
      let cond-part⁺ = construct-cond-parts
      (ref)(delay-type)(cond-waveform*)
      and else-part = (SIGASSN,(AT,mk-atmark()),delay-type,ref,waveform) in
      let if-stat = (IF ,atmark,cond-part⁺,else-part) in
      let process-stat = (PROCESS,id,ref*,ε,(if-stat),id) in
      CST [ process-stat ] (p)(u)(t))

collect-expressions-from-conditional-waveforms(cond-waveform*)
  = (null(cond-waveform*) → ε, let waveform = hd(cond-waveform*) in
    let waveform = second(cond-waveform)
    and condition = third(cond-waveform) in
    let transaction-exprs = collect-transaction-expressions(second(waveform)) in
    nconc
    (transaction-exprs,
     cons(condition,
          collect-expressions-from-conditional-waveforms(tl(cond-waveform*)))))))
construct-cond-parts(ref)(delay-type)(cond-waveform*)
= (null(cond-waveform*) → ε,
  let cond-waveform = hd(cond-waveform*) in
  let waveform = second(cond-waveform)
  and condition = third(cond-waveform) in
  let sig-assn-stat = (SIGASSN,(AT,mk-atmark()),delay-type,ref, waveform) in
  let cond-part = (condition,(sig-assn-stat)) in
  cons(cond-part,construct-cond-parts(ref)(delay-type)(tl(cond-waveform*))))

6.5.7 Sensitivity Lists

(SLT0) SLT [ ε ] (p)(u)(t) = u(t)

(SLT1) SLT [ ref ref* ] (p)(u)(t)
= SLT [ ref ] (p)(u₁)(t)
  where u₁ = λt.SLT [ ref* ] (p)(u)(t)

The refs in the sensitivity list of a PROCESS statement are checked in sequential order.

(SLT2) SLT [ REF name ] (p)(u)(t)
= let expr = ref in
  ET [ expr ] (p)(k)(t)
  where
  k = λ(w,e),t.
  let d = tdesc(w) in
  (is-sig?(w)
   → error
   (cat("Non-signal in process sensitivity list: "))(ref)),
  let d₁ = lookup(t)(p)(*SENS*) in
  let t₁ = enter
   (t)(p)(*SENS*)
   (<ε,(cons(SLX [ ref ] (p)(t),sensitivity(d₁))))
   in
  u(t₁))

6.5.8 Sequential Statements

(SST0) SST [ ε ] (p)(c)(t) = c(t)

(SST1) SST [ seq-stat seq-stat* ] (p)(c)(t)
= SST [ seq-stat ] (p)(c₁)(t)
  where c₁ = λt.SST [ seq-stat* ] (p)(c)(t)

Sequential statements are statically checked in the textual order of their appearance in the hardware description.

(SST2) SST [ NULL atmark ] (p)(c)(t) = c(t)

NULL statements require no checking.
(SST3) \textbf{SST} \left[ \text{VARASSN atmark ref expr} \right] \text{(p)(c)(t)}
\begin{align*}
&= \text{let expr}_0 = \text{ref in} \\
&\quad \text{ET} \left[ \text{expr}_0 \right] \text{(p)(k)(t)} \\
&\quad \text{where} \\
&\quad k = \lambda(w,e).t. \\
&\quad \text{let} \ d = \text{tdesc}(w) \text{ in} \\
&\quad (\neg \text{-is-var?}(w) \\
&\quad \quad \rightarrow \text{error} \\
&\quad \quad \quad (\text{cat}("\text{Illegal target in variable assignment statement: ")}) \\
&\quad \quad \quad (\text{seq-stat}), \\
&\quad \quad (\neg \text{-is-writable?}(w)) \\
&\quad \quad \rightarrow \text{error}(\text{cat}("\text{Read-only variable: ")(namef(d))}, \\
&\quad \quad \text{RT} \left[ \text{expr} \right] \text{(p)(k)}(t) \\
&\quad \quad \text{where} \\
&\quad \quad k_1 = \lambda(w_1,e_1).t. \\
&\quad \quad \text{let} \ d_1 = \text{tdesc}(w_1) \text{ in} \\
&\quad \quad (\text{match-types}(d,d_1) \rightarrow c(t), \\
&\quad \quad \text{error}(\text{cat}("\text{Assignment type mismatch: ")(d)(d)))) \\
\end{align*}

\text{find-process-env}(t)(p) \\
= (\text{null}(p) \lor \text{tag}(t)(\text{*UNIT* })) = \ast \text{PROCESS} \rightarrow p, \text{find-process-env}(t)(\text{rest}(p))

First the left part of a variable assignment statement is checked, and then the right part. The left part must be a variable of reference type (checked by \text{-is-var?} and \text{-is-writable?}), and the basic types of the left and right parts must be the same, as verified by \text{match-types} (refer to the definitions following semantic function DT5).

(SST4) \textbf{SST} \left[ \text{SIGASSN atmark delay-type ref waveform} \right] \text{(p)(c)(t)}
\begin{align*}
&= \text{let expr = ref in} \\
&\quad \text{ET} \left[ \text{expr} \right] \text{(p)(k)(t)} \\
&\quad \text{where} \\
&\quad k = \lambda(w,e).t. \\
&\quad \text{let} \ d = \text{tdesc}(w) \\
&\quad \quad \text{and} \ q = \text{find-process-env}(t)(p) \text{ in} \\
&\quad (\neg \text{-is-sig?}(w) \\
&\quad \quad \rightarrow \text{error} \\
&\quad \quad \quad (\text{cat}("\text{Illegal target of signal assignment statement: "})) \\
&\quad \quad \quad (\text{namef}(d)), \\
&\quad \quad (\neg \text{-is-writable?}(w) \rightarrow \text{error} \\
&\quad \quad \quad (\text{cat}("\text{Read-only signal: ")(namef} \\
&\quad \quad \quad \quad (d))), \\
&\quad \text{null}(q) \\
&\quad \rightarrow \text{error} \\
&\quad \quad (\text{cat}("\text{Sequential signal assignment statement not in a process: "})) \\
&\quad \quad (\text{seq-stat}), \\
&\quad \text{let} \ d_1 = \text{lookup-desc-for-ref}(\text{ref})(p)(t) \text{ in} \\
&\quad (\text{null}(\text{process}(d_1))) \\
&\quad \rightarrow \text{let} \ t_1 = \text{enter} \\
&\quad \quad (t)(\text{path}(d_1))(\text{idf}(d_1)) \\
&\quad \quad (\langle e, \text{*OBJECT* ,\text{path}(d_1), \text{exported}(d_1), \text{type}(d_1), \\
&\quad \quad \text{value}(d_1), \text{last}(q) \rangle \text{ in} \\
&\quad \quad c_1(t_1), \\
&\quad \quad \text{process}(d_1) = \text{last}(q) \rightarrow c_1(t), \\
&\quad \quad \text{error} \\
&\quad \quad \quad (\text{cat}("\text{Target of signal assignments in multiple processes: "}))
\end{align*}
\( \text{namef}(d_1) \))
where
\[
\begin{align*}
c_1 &= \lambda t_1. \textbf{WT} \begin{array}{l}
\text{waveform} \end{array} (p)(k_1)(t) \\
\text{where} \\
k_1 &= \lambda(w_1,e_1).t_1 \\
\text{let } d_1 &= \text{tdesc}(w_1) \text{ in} \\
\text{(match-types}(d_1, d_1) \rightarrow c(t), \\
\text{error} \\
(\text{cat}("\text{Assignment type mismatch: }") \\
(d)(d_1)))
\end{align*}
\]

\((\text{SST}5) \textbf{IF} \atmark \text{cond-part}^+ \text{ else-part } \begin{array}{l}(p)(c)(t)
\text{let } \text{seq-stat}^* = \text{else-part} \text{ in} \\
\text{check-if}(\text{cond-part}^*)(p)(c_1)(t) \\
\text{where } c_1 &= \lambda t. \begin{array}{l}(\text{null}(\text{seq-stat}^*) \rightarrow c(t), \textbf{SST} \begin{array}{l}
\text{seq-stat}^* \end{array} (p)(c)(t)
\text{check-if}(\text{cond-part}^*)(p)(c)(t)
\begin{array}{l}
\text{null}(\text{cond-part}^*) \rightarrow c(t), \\
\text{let } (\text{expr, seq-stat}^*) = \text{hd}(\text{cond-part}^*) \text{ in} \\
\textbf{RT} \begin{array}{l}
\text{expr} \end{array} (p)(k)(t) \\
\text{where} \\
k &= \lambda(w,e).t_1 \\
\text{(is-boolean?}(w) \\
\rightarrow \textbf{SST} \begin{array}{l}
\text{seq-stat}^* \end{array} (p)(c_1)(t) \\
\text{where } c_1 &= \lambda t. \begin{array}{l}(\text{check-if}(\text{cond-part}^*)(p)(c)(t), \\
\text{error}((\text{cat}("\text{Non-boolean condition in IF statement: }") \\
(d)(\text{tdesc}
\text{(w))))))
\end{array}
\end{align*}
\)

A Stage 3 VHDL IF statement consists of one or more conditional parts (cond-parts) followed by a (possibly empty) else-part. Each cond-part consists of a test expression followed by sequential statements that are to be executed when the test expression is the first to evaluate to true; the sequential statements constituting the else-part are to be executed when none of the test expressions is true.

The cond-parts are first checked, in order, by auxiliary semantic function check-if, after which the else-part, if nonempty, is checked by SST. Checking each cond-part involves first ascertaining that the basic type of its test expression is boolean, and then invoking SST to check its sequential statements.

\((\text{SST}6) \textbf{CASE} \atmark \text{expr} \textbf{case-alt}^+ \begin{array}{l}(p)(c)(t) \\
\text{where} \\
k &= \lambda(w,e).t_1 \\
\text{let } d &= \text{get-base-type}(\text{tdesc}(w)) \text{ in} \\
\textbf{AT} \begin{array}{l}
\text{case-alt}^+ \end{array} (d)(p)(y)(t_1) \\
\text{where} \\
y &= \lambda h,t_2 \\
(\neg\text{-case-type-ok}(d) \\
\rightarrow \text{error} \\
(\text{cat}("\text{Illegal CASE selector type: }") \text{namef}(d)) \\
(\text{seq-stat})), \\
(\neg\text{-case-coverage}(d)(h) \\
\rightarrow \text{error} \\
(\text{cat}("\text{Incomplete CASE coverage for type: }") \\
\text{namef}(d))(\text{seq-stat}), \\
c(t_2))
\end{array}
\)
case-type-ok(d)
= is-boolean-tdesc?(d) ∨ is-bit-tdesc?(d)

case-coverage(d)(h)
= (is-boolean-tdesc?(d) ∧ set-card(h) = 2)
 ∨ (is-bit-tdesc?(d) ∧ set-card(h) = 2).

set-card(x) = length(x)

A Stage 3 VHDL CASE statement consists of a selector expression followed by one or more case alternatives, each consisting of sequential statements preceded either by a nonempty sequence of discrete ranges or by the reserved word OTHERS. This discrete range sequence defines a case selection set for the particular case alternative.

The Stage 3 VHDL concrete syntax allows the statements in a case alternative to be preceded by a list of discrete ranges and expressions; for uniformity, in the Phase 1 abstract syntax (generated by the Stage 3 VHDL parser) these expressions are converted into equivalent one-element discrete ranges.

A CASE statement must be checked for the following:

- The basic type of all the case selection sets (and thus of the expressions that define the discrete ranges) must be the same, and must match that of the selector expression. In Stage 3 VHDL, the only such basic types are BOOLEAN, BIT, INTEGER, and enumeration types (including CHARACTER).

- Every expression of every discrete range in a CASE statement must be static, i.e., must have a value defined by Phase 1. This enables the contents of each case selection set to be determined during Phase 1. The OTHERS alternative, if present, defines a case selection set that is the complement of the union of the other case selection sets with respect to the set of values associated with the basic type. The BOOLEAN basic type is associated with the set of truth values \{FALSE, TRUE\}, the BIT basic type with the set of bit values \{0, 1\}, the INTEGER basic type with the set of integers \{..., -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, ...\}, the CHARACTER basic type with the set \{(CHAR 0), ..., (CHAR 127)\} of ASCII-128 character representations, and an arbitrary enumeration type with the set of its enumeration literals.

- The selection sets for each case alternative must be mutually disjoint, and their union must be the set associated with the basic type of the selector expression. The case selection subsets defined by the discrete ranges within each case alternative need not be disjoint. Note that a CASE statement with a selection expression of basic type INTEGER must have an OTHERS alternative, as the set of integers cannot be covered by a finite number of case alternatives, each with only a finite number of (finite) discrete ranges.

The basic type of the selector expression is first determined. Then semantic function AT is invoked with this basic type to check the case alternatives. Refer to the discussion of AT, which returns the union of the case selection sets associated with all of the case alternatives, a union that must cover the set associated with the selector expression's basic type.

78
(SST7) $\text{SST } [\text{LOOP atmark id seq-stat* opt-id }] (p)(c)(t)$

= let $q = \text{find-loop-label-env}(t)(p)$ in
  let labels = third(t(q)(\text{"LAB*" })) in
  (id $\in$ labels $\rightarrow$ \text{error(cat("Duplicate loop label: ")$(q)(id)$)),
  let $t_1 = \text{enter}(t(q)(\text{"LAB*" })(@(\epsilon,\text{cons}(id,labels))) in
  (\neg\text{null(opt-id)} \land \text{opt-id} \neq id
  \rightarrow \text{error}
    (\text{cat("Loop ")}(id)(" ended with incorrect identifier: ")\text{opt-id}),
  let $t_2 = \text{enter}(t_1(q)(id))(\epsilon,\text{LOOPNAME* },p) >$ in
  let $p_1 = \%p(id)$ in
  let $t_3 = \text{enter}(\text{extend}(t_2)(p)(id))(p_1)(\text{"UNIT" })(\epsilon,\text{LOOP* }) >$ in
  let $t_4 = \text{enter}(t_3(p)(\text{"LAB*" })(\epsilon,\epsilon) >$ in
  let $t_5 = \text{enter}(t_4(p)(id))(\epsilon,\text{LOOPNAME* },p) >$ in
  let $c_1 = \lambda\text{SST } [\text{seq-stat* }] (p_1)(c)(t)$ in
  $c_1(t_5))$

(SST8) $\text{SST } [\text{WHILE atmark id expr seq-stat* opt-id }] (p)(c)(t)$

= let $q = \text{find-loop-label-env}(t)(p)$ in
  let labels = third(t(q)(\text{"LAB*" })) in
  (id $\in$ labels $\rightarrow$ \text{error(cat("Duplicate loop label: ")$(q)(id)$)),
  let $t_1 = \text{enter}(t(q)(\text{"LAB*" })(@(\epsilon,\text{cons}(id,labels))) in
  (\neg\text{null(opt-id)} \land \text{opt-id} \neq id
  \rightarrow \text{error}
    (\text{cat("Loop ")}(id)(" ended with incorrect identifier: ")\text{opt-id}),
  let $t_2 = \text{enter}(t_1(q)(id))(\epsilon,\text{LOOPNAME* },p) >$ in
  let $p_1 = \%p(id)$ in
  let $t_3 = \text{enter}(\text{extend}(t_2)(p)(id))(p_1)(\text{"UNIT" })(\epsilon,\text{LOOP* }) >$ in
  let $t_4 = \text{enter}(t_3(p)(\text{"LAB*" })(\epsilon,\epsilon) >$ in
  let $t_5 = \text{enter}(t_4(p)(id))(\epsilon,\text{LOOPNAME* },p) >$ in
  let $c_1 = \lambda\text{SST } [\text{seq-stat* }] (p_1)(c)(t)$ in
  $\text{RT } [\text{expr }] (p_1)(k)(t)$
  where
    $k = \lambda(w,\epsilon).t,$
    (is-boolean?(w) $\rightarrow$ $c_1(t),$
     error
     (cat("Non-boolean condition in WHILE statement: "))
     (tdesc(w))))$

(SST9) $\text{SST } [\text{FOR atmark id ref discrete-range seq-stat* opt-id }] (p)(c)(t)$

= let $q = \text{find-loop-label-env}(t)(p)$ in
  let labels = third(t(q)(\text{"LAB*" })) in
  (id $\in$ labels $\rightarrow$ \text{error(cat("Duplicate loop label: ")$(q)(id)$)),
  let $t_1 = \text{enter}(t(q)(\text{"LAB*" })(@(\epsilon,\text{cons}(id,labels))) in
  (\neg\text{null(opt-id)} \land \text{opt-id} \neq id
  \rightarrow \text{error}
    (\text{cat("Loop ")}(id)(" ended with incorrect identifier: ")\text{opt-id}),
  let $t_2 = \text{enter}(t_1(q)(id))(\epsilon,\text{LOOPNAME* },p) >$ in
  let $p_1 = \%p(id)$ in
  let $t_3 = \text{enter}(\text{extend}(t_2)(p)(id))(p_1)(\text{"UNIT" })(\epsilon,\text{LOOP* }) >$ in
  let $t_4 = \text{enter}(t_3(p)(\text{"LAB*" })(\epsilon,\epsilon) >$ in
  let $t_5 = \text{enter}(t_4(p)(id))(\epsilon,\text{LOOPNAME* },p) >$ in
  let (direction,expr1,expr2) = discrete-range in
  $\text{RT } [\text{expr1 }] (p)(k_1)(t)$
  where
    $k_1 = \lambda(w_1,\epsilon_1).t,$
    let $d_1 = \text{tdesc}(w_1)$ in
    $\text{RT } [\text{expr2 }] (p)(k_2)(t)$

79
where

\[ k_2 = \lambda (w_2, c_2). t. \]

let \( d_2 = \text{tdesc}(w_2) \) in

\( \text{(match-types}(d_1, d_2) \)

\( \rightarrow \) let \( \text{decl} = (\text{DEC}, \text{CONST}, \)

\( \text{(hd(hd(tl(ref)))))), \)

\( \text{(hd(d_1))),} \)

\( \text{hd(tl(discrete-range)))} \) in

\( \text{DT \[ decl \] (p_1)(tt)(u)(t_3),} \)

\( \text{error} \)

(\text{cat}("\text{Bounds type mismatch in FOR statement: ").} \)

(\text{seq-stat))))

where

\[ u = \lambda t_6. c_1(t_6) \]

\[ \text{where } c_1 = \lambda t_7. \text{SST \[ seq-stat \] \[ (p_1)(c)(t_7) \]} \]

find-looplevel-\text{env}(t)(p)

\( = \) let \( t_g = \text{tag}(t(p)\text{\{*UNIT*\})} \) in

\( \) (null(p) \&\& t_g \in \text{\{\*PROCESS* \*PROCEDURE* \*FUNCTION* \*LOOP*\}) \rightarrow p, \)

\( \) find-looplevel-\text{env}(t)(\text{rest}(p))

In Stage 3 VHDL, entering a loop (i.e., a \text{LOOP}, \text{WHILE} or \text{FOR} statement) creates a new component environment of the TSE, just as in the case of entering a subprogram (see below). The identifier that is the loop’s label must be checked for uniqueness among the identifiers used thus far as labels in the innermost enclosing program unit (process, procedure, function, or loop). If unique, the identifier is appended to the innermost enclosing unit’s label identifier list (bound to the special identifier \text{LAB*} of the corresponding environment).

A *\text{LOOKNAME*} descriptor is then entered into the current environment. The resulting TSE is extended to reflect loop entry; the *\text{UNIT*} entry in the extended TSE is set to *\text{LOOP*} to associate the extended TSE with the loop, and the *\text{LOOKNAME*} descriptor is also entered into the extended TSE. This latter descriptor is used by \text{EXIT} statements contained in this loop to validate the visibility of their loop names.

In the case of a \text{WHILE} loop, the basic type of the iteration control expression is checked to be \text{BOOLEAN}, and the loop body is also checked by \text{SST}.

In the case of a \text{FOR} loop, the basic types of the iteration bounds expressions are checked to match, the implicit declaration of the iteration parameter is processed by semantic function \text{DT}, and the loop body is checked with \text{SST}.

(SST10) \text{SST \[ EXIT atmark opt-dotted-name opt-expr \] \[ (p)(c)(t) \]} \[ (null(find-looplevel-\text{env}(t)(p))) \]

\( \rightarrow \) error(\text{cat}("EXIT statement not in a loop: ").\text{seq-stat})), \)

\( \) (null(opt-dotted-name) \rightarrow c_1(t)), \)

name-type(opt-dotted-name)(e)(p)(t)(v)

\( \) where

\[ v = \lambda w. (\text{tag(tdesc}(w))) \neq \text{\*LOOKNAME*} \]

\( \rightarrow \) error(\text{cat}("Not a loop name: ").\text{name(tdesc}(w)))). \)

\( \) \[ c_1(t) \]

\( \) where

\[ c_1 = \lambda t. (\text{null(opt-expr)} \rightarrow c(t), \)

\( \) let expr = opt-expr in

80
$RT \ [ \ expr \ ] \ (p)(k)(t)$

where

$k = \lambda(w,e),t.$
        (is-boolean?(w) → c(t),
         error
         (cat("Non-boolean condition in EXIT statement: ")
          (tdesc(w))))

An EXIT statement must be contained within a loop; otherwise, an error is raised. If an exit control expression is present, its basic type is checked; if not BOOLEAN, an error is raised.

(SST11) $SST \ [ \ CALL \ atmark \ ref \ ] \ (p)(c)(t)$

= let expr = ref in
  $ET \ [ \ expr \ ] \ (p)(k)(t)$

where

$k = \lambda(w,e),t.$

(tag(tdesc(w)) = *VOID* → c(t),
 error(cat("Invalid procedure call: ")(seq-stat)))

A procedure call statement boils down to an expression that is a Stage 3 VHDL name. This expression is checked by ET, and must have a VOID basic type.

(SST12) $SST \ [ \ RETURN \ atmark \ opt-exp] \ (p)(c)(t)$

= let d = context(t)(p) in
  let tg = tag(d)
    and cname = name(d) in
    (null(opt-exp)
     → (tg ≠ *PROCEDURE*
        → error
        (cat("RETURN without expression in context of non-procedure: ")
         (cname)(seq-stat)),
         c(t)),
      (tg ≠ *FUNCTION*
        → error
        (cat("RETURN with expression in context of non-function: ")
         (cname)(seq-stat)),
      let expr = opt-exp in
    $RT \ [ \ expr \ ] \ (p)(k)(t)$

where

$k = \lambda(w,e),t.$

(map-match-types(tdesc(w))(extract-rtypes(signatures(d))))
  → c(t),
  error
  (cat("Incorrect return expression type in function: ")
   (cname)(seq-stat))))

context(t)(path)
    = let d = t(path)(*UNIT*) in
      (d = *UNBOUND* → context(t)(rest(path)),
       case tag(d)
         (*PROCEDURE*, *FUNCTION*, *PACKAGE* ) → t(rest(path))(last(path)),
       OTHERWISE → context(t)(rest(path))))
extract-rtype\(\text{signatures}\)
\(= (\text{null}(\text{signatures}) \rightarrow \varepsilon, \)\)
\(\text{cons}(\text{tdesc}(\text{rtype}(\text{hd}(\text{signatures}))), \text{extract-rtype}(\text{tl}(\text{signatures}))))\)

RETURN statements have two forms, depending on the \texttt{PROCEDURE} or \texttt{FUNCTION} context in which they can appear. Auxiliary semantic function \texttt{context} returns the descriptor of the smallest subprogram or package enclosing the program text whose local environment is at the end of the current path. It is first determined whether the \texttt{RETURN} statement is in the proper context. If so, then if the \texttt{RETURN} statement has an expression, its basic type must be equal to the basic type of the result type of the function in which it appears.

(SST13) \texttt{SST} \(\llbracket \text{WAIT atmark ref* opt-exp}_{1} \text{ opt-exp}_{2} \rrbracket \) \(\text{p}(\text{c})(\text{t})\)
\(\quad = \text{let } c_{1} = \lambda t. \text{let } d = \text{lookup}(t)(p)(\ast \texttt{SENS* } \text{in} \)\)
\(\quad \quad \text{(~null(\text{sensitivity}(d))) \)\)
\(\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{-- error} \)\)
\(\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{\texttt{(cat}("\text{WAIT statement }\)\texttt{)(seq-stat)}\texttt{)}}\)\)
\(\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{(" illegal in process with sensitivity list: ")}\)\)
\(\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{(last}(p))\texttt{)),}\)\)
\(\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{let } c_{2} = \lambda t. (\text{null}(\text{opt-exp}_{1}) \rightarrow c(t), \)\)
\(\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{let } \text{expr}_{2} = \text{opt-exp}_{2} \text{ in} \)\)
\(\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{\texttt{RT} \llbracket \text{expr}_{2} \rrbracket \text{p}(k)(t)}\)\)
\(\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{where}\)\)
\(\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad k_{2} = \lambda (w_{2}, e_{2}). t_{2}.\)\)
\(\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{(is-time?}(w_{2}) \rightarrow c(t_{2}), \)\)
\(\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{error}\)\)
\(\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{\texttt{(cat}("\text{ILL-typed timeout clause in WAIT statement: "})\)\texttt{)(seq-stat)}))) \)\)\)
\(\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{in} \)\)
\(\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{(null}(\text{opt-exp}_{2}) \rightarrow c_{2}(t), \)\)
\(\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{let } \text{expr}_{1} = \text{opt-exp}_{1} \text{ in} \)\)
\(\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{\texttt{RT} \llbracket \text{expr}_{1} \rrbracket \text{p}(k)(t)}\)\)
\(\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{where}\)\)
\(\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad k_{1} = \lambda (w_{1}, e_{1}). t_{1}.\)\)
\(\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{(is-boolean?}(w_{1}) \rightarrow c_{2}(t_{1}), \)\)
\(\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{error}\)
\(\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{\texttt{(cat}("\text{Non-boolean condition clause in WAIT statement: "})\)\texttt{)(seq-stat)}))) \)\)\)
\(\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{in} \)\)
\(\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{\texttt{check-wait-vars(seq-stat)(ref*)p}(c)(t)}\)\)
\(\text{check-wait-vars(seq-stat)(ref*)p}(c)(t)\)
\(\quad = (\text{null}(\texttt{ref*}) \rightarrow c(t), \)\)
\(\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{let } \text{ref} = \text{hd}(\text{ref*})\)\)
\(\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{and } c_{1} = \lambda t. \text{check-wait-vars(seq-stat)(tl}(\text{ref*})\text{p}(c)(t) \text{ in}\)\)
\(\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{\texttt{check-wait-vars(seq-stat)(ref*)p}(c)(t)}\)\)
\(\text{check-wait-vars(seq-stat)(ref*)p}(c)(t)\)
\(\quad = \text{let } \text{expr} = \text{ref} \text{ in} \)\)
\(\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{\texttt{ET} \llbracket \text{expr} \rrbracket \text{p}(k)(t)}\)\)
\(\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{where}\)\)
\(\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad k = \lambda (w, e). t.\)\)
\(\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{let } d = \text{tdesc}(w) \text{ in} \)\)
\(\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad (d = \ast \texttt{UNBOUND* } \rightarrow \text{error}(\text{cat}("\text{Unbound identifier: "})(\text{namef}(d))), \)\)
\(\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{(is-sig?}(w) \rightarrow c(t), \)\)
\(\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{error}\)\)
\(\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{\texttt{(cat}("\text{Non-signal }\)\texttt{)(ref)}\)\texttt{)}}\)
\(\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{(" in sensitivity clause of WAIT statement: "})\)\texttt{)(seq-stat)))))} \)\)

82
Semantic equation **SST13** specifies the static semantics of the **WAIT** statement, which consists of a sensitivity list **ref**, an optional condition **opt-expr**₁, and an optional timeout expression **opt-expr**₂. First, auxiliary semantic function **check-wait-ref** recursively traverses the sensitivity list, checking that each **ref** denotes a declared signal. Next, a descriptor for the special identifier **SENS** is looked up, and if its sensitivity field is nonempty, then the **WAIT** statement illegally appears inside a **PROCESS** statement with a sensitivity list. If present, the condition is checked to have basic type **BOOLEAN**. Finally, if present, the timeout expression is checked to have basic type **TIME**.

### 6.5.9 Case Alternatives

\[(\text{AT0}) \ \text{AT} \ [ \ e \ ] \ (\text{d})(\text{p})(\text{y})(\text{t}) = \text{y(}\text{emptyset})(\text{t}) \]

\[(\text{AT1}) \ \text{AT} \ [ \ \text{case-alt}\ast \ \text{case-alt} \ ] \ (\text{d})(\text{p})(\text{y})(\text{t}) \]
\[
= \text{AT} \ [ \ \text{case-alt}\ast \ ] \ (\text{d})(\text{p})(\text{y}_1)(\text{t})
\]
\[
\text{where}
\]
\[
y_1 = \lambda h_1, t_1, \quad \text{AT} \ [ \ \text{case-alt} \ ] \ (\text{d})(\text{p})(\text{y}_2)(\text{t}_1)
\]
\[
\text{where}
\]
\[
y_2 = \lambda h_2, t_2, \quad \text{(case-overlap}(d)((h_1,h_2))
\]
\[
\rightarrow \text{error}
\]
\[
\text{(cat("Overlapping case alternatives for type: ")},
\]
\[
\text{(namef}(d))),
\]
\[
y(\text{case-union}(d)((h_1,h_2))(t_2))
\]

\[(\text{AT2}) \ \text{AT} \ [ \ \text{CASECHOICE} \ \text{discrete-range}^+ \ \text{seq-stat}\ast \ ] \ (\text{d})(\text{p})(\text{y})(\text{t}) \]
\[
= \text{DRT} \ [ \ \text{discrete-range}^+ \ ] \ (\text{d})(\text{p})(\text{y}_1)(\text{t})
\]
\[
\text{where}
\]
\[
y_1 = \lambda h, t_1, \quad \text{SST} \ [ \ \text{seq-stat}\ast \ ] \ (\text{p})(\text{c})(\text{t}_1)
\]
\[
\text{where} \quad c = \lambda t_2, y(h)(t_2)
\]

\[(\text{AT3}) \ \text{AT} \ [ \ \text{CASEOTHERS} \ \text{seq-stat}\ast \ ] \ (\text{d})(\text{p})(\text{y})(\text{t}) \]
\[
= \text{SST} \ [ \ \text{seq-stat}\ast \ ] \ (\text{p})(\text{c})(\text{t})
\]
\[
\text{where}
\]
\[
c = \lambda t_1, y(\text{is-boolean-tdesc}(d) \rightarrow \{\text{FALSE, TRUE}\}, \text{is-bit-tdesc}(d) \rightarrow \{0,1\}, \text{is-integer-tdesc}(d) \rightarrow \text{INT}, \text{is-enumeration-tdesc}(d) \rightarrow \text{ENUM}, \text{error}
\]
\[
\text{(cat("Illegal CASE selector type: ")(namef}(d))(\text{case-alt}))
\]
\[
(t_1)
\]

case-overlap(d)(x,y)
\[
= ((\text{is-integer-tdesc}(d) \land (x = \text{INT} \lor y = \text{INT} \lor x \in y \neq \text{emptyset}) \lor (\text{is-enumeration-tdesc}(d) \land (x = \text{ENUM} \lor y = \text{ENUM}) \rightarrow \text{INT}, x \cup y))
\]

case-union(d)(x,y)
\[
= (\text{is-integer-tdesc}(d) \land (x = \text{INT} \lor y = \text{INT}) \rightarrow \text{INT}, \text{is-enumeration-tdesc}(d) \land (x = \text{ENUM} \lor y = \text{ENUM}) \rightarrow \text{ENUM}, x \cup y)
\]

83
Semantic function AT processes each case alternative in turn, beginning with the last one. As the case selection set of each alternative is computed, it is checked for disjointness with the union of the selection sets of the preceding alternatives. If disjoint, then the union of these two case selection sets is returned; otherwise an error is raised.

Note that the case selection set of an OTHERS alternative (represented by CASEOTHERS in the abstract syntax) is always disjoint from the union of the selection sets of the preceding alternatives, because (1) a CASE statement can contain at most one such alternative; (2) if such an alternative is present, it must be the last alternative; and (3) the case selection set of an OTHERS alternative is the relative complement of the union of the case selection sets of the preceding alternatives.

AT invokes the semantic function DRT to compute the case selection set defined by the sequence of discrete ranges of a particular case alternative.

### 6.5.10 Discrete Ranges

(DRT0) $DRT\ [e] (d)(p)(y)(t) = y(\text{emptyset})(t)$

(DRT1) $DRT = DRT \ [\text{discrete-range discrete-range*}] (d)(p)(y)(t)$

where

$y_1 = \lambda h_1, t_1.
DRT \ [\text{discrete-range*}] (d)(p)(y_2)(t_1)$

where $y_2 = \lambda h_2, t_2. y(h_1 \cup h_2)(t_2)$

A sequence of discrete ranges is processed in order, from left to right.

(DRT2) $DRT = DRT \ [\text{discrete-range}] (d)(p)(y)(t)$

where

$RT \ [\text{expr1} \ [\text{expr2} \ (p)(k_1)(t)$

where

$k_1 = \lambda (w_1, e_1). t_1.$

$\neg \text{match-types}(d, \text{tdesc}(w_1))$

$\rightarrow \text{error}($cat("CASE type mismatch: ")$)(d)(\text{tdesc}(w_1)),$

$e_1 = *UNDEF*$

$\rightarrow \text{error}($cat("Non-static CASE expression: ")$)$

$\text{expr1}$

$RT \ [\text{expr2} \ (p)(k_2)(t_1)$

where

$k_2 = \lambda (w_2, e_2). t_2.$

$\neg \text{match-types}(d, \text{tdesc}(w_2))$

$\rightarrow \text{error}$

$($cat("CASE type mismatch: ")$)(d)(\text{tdesc}(w_2)),$

$e_2 = *UNDEF*$

$\rightarrow \text{error}$

$($cat("Non-static CASE expression: ")$)$

$\text{expr2}$

$y($mk-set$(d)((\text{direction}, e_1, e_2))(t_2))$

$\text{mk-set}(d)(\text{direction}, e_1, e_2)$

$= ($case tag$(d)$

$*BOOL*$

84
\( \rightarrow (e_1 = e_2 \rightarrow \{e_1\}) \),
\( \text{direction} = \text{TO} \rightarrow (e_1 = \text{FALSE} \wedge e_2 = \text{TRUE} \rightarrow \{\text{FALSE}, \text{TRUE}\}, \text{emptyset}), \)
\( (e_1 = \text{TRUE} \wedge e_2 = \text{FALSE} \rightarrow \{\text{TRUE}, \text{FALSE}\}, \text{emptyset})) \),

*BIT* \( \rightarrow (e_1 = e_2 - \{e_1\})\),
\( \text{direction} = \text{TO} \rightarrow (e_1 = 0 \wedge e_2 = 1 \rightarrow \{0,1\}, \text{emptyset}), \)
\( (e_1 = 1 \wedge e_2 = 0 \rightarrow \{1,0\}, \text{emptyset})) \),

(*INT*, *INT_TYPE*)
\( \rightarrow \text{direction} = \text{TO} \rightarrow (e_1 \leq e_2 \rightarrow \{e_1\} \cup \text{mk-set(d)}((\text{direction}, (e_1+1), e_2)), \text{emptyset}), \)
\( (e_1 \geq e_2 \rightarrow \{e_1\} \cup \text{mk-set(d)}((\text{direction}, (e_1-1), e_2)), \text{emptyset})) \),

*ENUMTYPE*
\( \rightarrow \text{direction} = \text{TO} \rightarrow \text{mk-set(literals(d))}(e_1)(e_2), \)
\( \text{mk-set(reverse(literals(d))})(e_1)(e_2)), \)

OTHERWISE \( \rightarrow \text{error(cat("\text{Illegal CASE expression type tag: "})(\text{tag(d)}))} \)

\( \text{mk-set(id}^+(\text{id}_1)(\text{id}_2) \)
\( = \text{let } n_1 = \text{position(id}_1)(\text{id}^+) \)
\( \text{and } n_2 = \text{position(id}_2)(\text{id}^+) \text{ in} \)
\( (n_2 < n_1 \rightarrow e, \text{n-th-ltl}(n_1)(\text{reverse(n-th-ltl(length(id}^+)-(n_2+1))(\text{reverse(id}^+)))))) \)

\( \text{n-th-ltl}(n)(x) = (n = 0 \rightarrow x, \text{n-th-ltl}(n-1)(\text{tl}(x))) \)

\( \text{position(a)}(x) = \text{position-aux(a)}(x)(0) \)

\( \text{position-aux(a)}(x)(n) \)
\( = (\text{null(x)} \rightarrow \text{ff}, (a = \text{hd(x)} \rightarrow n, \text{position-aux(a)}(\text{tl(x)})(1+n))) \)

\( \text{reverse(x)} = \text{reverse-aux(x)}(e) \)

\( \text{reverse-aux(x)}(y) = (\text{null(x)} \rightarrow y, \text{reverse-aux(\text{tl(x)})}(\text{cons(hd(x),y)})) \)

Semantic function DRT receives a case selector expression's basic type from AT. DRT detects a mismatch between the basic type of a discrete range and that of the selector expression; it also detects the presence of nonstatic expressions in a discrete range. Case selection sets are constructed by the function mk-set ("make set"), which takes a type descriptor and a pair of translated static expressions that represent a discrete range (that the expressions are static is checked in Phase 1) and returns the corresponding set of values.

6.5.11 Waveforms and Transactions

(WT1) \( \text{WT} \ [\ \text{WAVE} \ transaction^+] \ (p)(k)(t) = \text{TRT} \ [\ \text{transaction}^+] \ (p)(k)(t) \)

(TRT1) \( \text{TRT} \ [\ \text{transaction} \ transaction^+] \ (p)(k)(t) \)
\( = \text{TRT} \ [\ \text{transaction} \ (p)(k1)(t)) \)
\( \text{where} \)
\( k_1 = \lambda(w_1, e_1), t_1. \)
\( \text{let } d_1 = \text{t-desc}(w_1) \text{ in} \)
\( (\text{null(transact})^+(\rightarrow k((w_1, e_1))(t_1)), \)
\( \text{let transaction}_1^+ = \text{transaction}^+ \text{ in} \)
\( \text{TRT} \ [\ \text{transaction}^+_1 \ (p)(k2)(t_1) \)
\( \text{where} \)
\( k_2 = \lambda(w_2, e_2), t_2. \)
\( \text{let } d_2 = \text{t-desc}(w_2) \text{ in} \)

85
(¬match-types(d₁,d₂)
  → error
  (cat("Type mismatch for waveform transactions: ")
   (transaction)(hd(transaction↑))),
  e₁ ≠ *UNDEF* ∧ e₂ ≠ *UNDEF*
  → (e₁ ≥ e₂
  → error
  (cat("Nonascending times for waveform transactions: ")
   (transaction)(hd(transaction↑))),
  k((w₂, e₂))(t₂)),
  k((w₂, e₁))(t₂))

(TRY) \[\text{TRANS expr opt-expr ⇒ (p)(k)(t)}\]
\[= \text{RT [ expr [ (p)(k₁)(t) where}}\]
\[k₁ = \lambda (w₁, e₁), t₁.
  (null(opt-expr) → k((w₁, 0))(t₁),
  let expr₂ = opt-expr in
  \text{RT [ expr [ (p)(k₂)(t₂) where}}\]
\[k₂ = \lambda (w₂, e₂), t₂.
  (¬is-time?(w₂)
  → error
  (cat("Transaction has ill-typed time expression: ")
   (tdesc(w₂))),
  e₂ ≠ *UNDEF*
  → (e₂ < 0
  → error
  (cat("Transaction has negative time expression: ")
   (e₂),
  k((w₁, e₂))(t₂)),
  k((w₁, e₂))(t₂))\]

6.5.12 Expressions

(ET0) \[\text{ET [ ε [ (p)(k)(t) = k((ε, ε))(t)}\]

(ET1) \[\text{ET [ FALSE [ (p)(k)(t) = k((mk-type((CONST VAL) (bool-type-desc(t))),(FALSE )))(t)}\]

(ET2) \[\text{ET [ TRUE [ (p)(k)(t) = k((mk-type((CONST VAL) (bool-type-desc(t))),(TRUE )))(t)}\]

(ET3) \[\text{ET [ BIT bitlit [ (p)(k)(t) = k((mk-type((CONST VAL) (bit-type-desc(t)),\text{B [ bitlit ] })(t)\]

(ET4) \[\text{ET [ NUM constant [ (p)(k)(t) = k((mk-type((CONST VAL) (int-type-desc(t)),\text{N [ constant ] })(t)\]

(ET5) \[\text{ET [ TIME constant time-unit [ (p)(k)(t) = k((mk-type((CONST VAL) (time-type-desc(t)),\text{N [ constant ] })(t)\]

\text{let normalized-constant = (case time-unit}
\text{FS \text{→ N [ constant ] ,}}
\text{PS \text{→ 1000×N [ constant ] ,}}
\text{NS \text{→ 1000000×N [ constant ] ,}}
\text{US \text{→ 1000000000×N [ constant ] ,}}
\text{MS \text{→ 1000000000000×N [ constant ] ,}}
\text{SEC \text{→ 100000000000000×N [ constant ] ,}}
\text{\text{86}}\]
MIN = 60 × (10000000000000000000000 × N) [constant],
HR = 3600 × (10000000000000000000000 × N) [constant],
OTHERWISE
← error
(cat("Illegal unit name for physical type TIME: ")
(time-unit)) in
k((mk-type((CONST VAL) )(time-type-desc(t)),normalized-constant))(t)

(ET6) ET [CHAR constant] (p)(k)(t)
= let expr = (CHAR,constant) in
  let d = lookup(t)((STANDARD)(expr)) in
  k((type(d),idf!d))(t)

(ET7) ET [BITSTR bit-lit*] (p)(k)(t)
= let expr* = bit-lit* in
  (null(expr*))
  → k((mk-type((CONST VAL) )(lookup(t)(c)(BIT_VECTOR),*UNDEF*))(t),
    list-type(expr*)(p)(t)(vv)
  where vv = λw*.array-type(BIT_VECTOR)(expr*)(w*)(t)(p)(k))

(ET8) ET [STR char-lit*] (p)(k)(t)
= let expr* = char-lit* in
  (null(expr*)) → k((mk-type((CONST VAL) )(lookup(t)(c)(STRING),*UNDEF*))(t),
    list-type(expr*)(p)(t)(vv)
  where vv = λw*.array-type(STRING)(expr*)(w*)(t)(p)(k))
array-type(array-type-name)(expr*)(w*)(t)(p)(k)
= let d = tdesc(hd(w*)) in
  (chk-array-type(d)(tl(w*)))
  → let array-type-desc = array-type-desc
  (new-array-type-name(array-type-name))(c)(p)(tt)
  (TO)((NUM 1))((NUM LENGTH(w*))(d)) in
  k((mk-type(tmode(hd(w*)))(array-type-desc),*UNDEF*))(t),
  error(cat("Array aggregate of inhomogeneous type: ")(expr*))
chk-array-type(d)(w*)
= (null(w*)) → tt,
match-types(d)(tdesc(hd(w*))) → chk-array-type(d)(tl(w*)),
ff

(ET9) ET [REF name] (p)(k)(t)
= name-type(name)(c)(p)(t)(v)
  where
  v = λw.let d = tdesc(w) in
  (second(tmode(w)) = TYP
    → error(cat("Wrong context for a type: ")(name(d))(expr)),
    tag(d) = *OBJECT* → k((type(d),value(d)))(t),
    tag(d) = *ENUMERAL* → k((type(d),idf!d))(t),
    k((w,*UNDEF*))(t))

(ET10) ET [PAGGR expr*] (p)(k)(t)
= (length(expr*))= 1
  → let expr = hd(expr*) in
    ET [expr] (p)(k)(t),
  list-type(expr*)(p)(t)(vv)
  where vv = λw*.array-type(*ANONYMOUS*)(expr*)(w*)(t)(p)(k))
(ET11) \[ \text{ET} \llbracket \text{unary-op expr} \rrbracket (p)(k)(t) \\
= \text{RT} \llbracket \text{expr} \rrbracket (p)(k_1)(t) \\
\text{where } k_1 = \lambda (w,e_1), t. \text{OT1} \llbracket \text{unary-op} \rrbracket (k)((w,e))(t) \]

(ET12) \[ \text{ET} \llbracket \text{binary-op expr}_1 \ \text{expr}_2 \rrbracket (p)(k)(t) \\
= \text{RT} \llbracket \text{expr}_1 \rrbracket (p)(k_1)(t) \\
\text{where } \\
k_1 = \lambda (w_1,e_1), t. \\
\text{RT} \llbracket \text{expr}_2 \rrbracket (p)(k_2)(t) \\
\text{where } k_2 = \lambda (w_2,e_2), t. \\
\text{OT2} \llbracket \text{binary-op} \rrbracket (k)((w_1,e_1))((w_2,e_2))(t) \]

(ET13) \[ \text{ET} \llbracket \text{relational-op expr}_1 \ \text{expr}_2 \rrbracket (p)(k)(t) \\
= \text{RT} \llbracket \text{expr}_1 \rrbracket (p)(k_1)(t) \\
\text{where } \\
k_1 = \lambda (w_1,e_1), t. \\
\text{RT} \llbracket \text{expr}_2 \rrbracket (p)(k_2)(t) \\
\text{where } k_2 = \lambda (w_2,e_2), t. \\
\text{OT2} \llbracket \text{relational-op} \rrbracket (k)((w_1,e_1))((w_2,e_2))(t) \]

(RT1) \[ \text{RT} \llbracket \text{expr} \rrbracket (p)(k)(t) \\
= \text{ET} \llbracket \text{expr} \rrbracket (p)(k_1)(t) \\
\text{where } \\
k_1 = \lambda (w,e), t. \\
\text{let } t = \text{tmode}(w) \\
\text{and } d = \text{tdesc}(w) \text{ in } \\
(\text{second}(t m) = \text{ACC} \rightarrow \text{error}) \\
(\text{cat}(\text{"Non-value (an access): "})(\text{expr}), \text{ACC}) \\
(\text{second}(t m) = \text{OUT} \rightarrow \text{error}) \\
(\text{cat}(\text{"Cannot dereference formal OUT parameter: "})(\text{expr}), \text{OUT}) \\
(\text{second}(t m) = \text{VAL} \land \text{is-void-tdesc}(d) \rightarrow \text{error}(\text{cat}(\text{"Void value: "})(\text{expr}), \text{VAL})) \\
\text{let } w_1 = ((\text{second}(t m) = \text{AGR} \rightarrow \text{(DUMMY AGR)}, \text{(DUMMY VAL)}, \text{tdesc}(w))) \text{ in } \\
k((w_1,e))(t)) \]

(OT1.1) \[ \text{OT1} \llbracket \text{unary-op} \rrbracket (k)(w,e)(t) \\
= \text{let } d = \text{tdesc}(w) \text{ in } \\
(\text{match-types}(d, \text{argtypes}(\text{unary-op}))(d)) \\
\rightarrow k((\text{restype}(\text{unary-op})(d), \text{resval}(\text{unary-op})(e)(d)))(t), \text{error} \\
(\text{cat}(\text{"Argument type mismatch for unary operator: "})(\text{unary-op}))(d)) \]

\text{argtypes}(\text{unary-op})(d) = \text{(case unary-op} \text{NOT} \\
\rightarrow (\text{is-boolean-tdesc}(d) \lor \text{is-bit-tdesc}(d) \rightarrow d, \text{argtypes-error(\text{unary-op})(d)}), \\
(\text{PLUS}, \text{NEG}, \text{ABS}) \\
\rightarrow (\text{is-integer-tdesc}(d) \lor \text{is-time-tdesc}(d) \rightarrow d, \text{argtypes-error(\text{unary-op})(d)}), \\
\text{OTHERWISE} \rightarrow \text{error} \\
(\text{cat}(\text{"Unrecognized Stage 3 VHDL unary operator: "})(\text{unary-op}))) \]

88
argtypes1-error(unary-op)(d) = error(cat("Unary operator ") (unary-op)(" not implemented for type ") (d))
resval1(unary-op)(d) = mk-type((DUMMY VAL) ) (d)
resval1(unary-op)(e)(d) = (e = *UNDEF* → *UNDEF* ,
(case unary-op
  NOT
  → (is-boolean-tdesc?(d) → ¬e,
      is-bit-tdesc?(d) → invert-bit(e).
    *UNDEF* ),
  PLUS → e,
  NEG → ¬e,
  ABS → abs(e),
  OTHERWISE → *UNDEF* ))
invert-bit(bitlit) = mk-bit-simp-symbol((-bitlit)+1)

mk-bit-simp-symbol(bitlit) = (case bitlit
  0 → (BS 0 1) ,
  1 → (BS 1 1) ,
  OTHERWISE → error(cat("Can't construct simp symbol for bit: ")(bitlit)))

(OT2.1) OT2 [ binary-op ] (k)(w1,e1)(w2,e2)(t) = let d1 = tdesc(w1) and d2 = tdesc(w2) in
      (argtypes2(binary-op)((d1,d2))
       → k((resval2(binary-op)((d1,d2)))(t),
           resval2((d1,d2))(binary-op)((e1,e2)))(t),
       error
       (cat("Argument type mismatch for binary operator: ")(binary-op)(d1)
        (d2))))

(OT2.2) OT2 [ relational-op ] (k)(w1,e1)(w2,e2)(t) = let d1 = tdesc(w1) and d2 = tdesc(w2) in
      (argtypes2(relational-op)((d1,d2))
       → k((mk-type((DUMMY VAL) ) (bool-type-desc(t)),
           resval2((d1,d2))(relational-op)((e1,e2)))(t),
       error
       (cat("Argument type mismatch for relational operator: ")
        (relational-op)(d1)(d2))))

argtypes2(op)(d1,d2) = (case op
  (AND ,NAND ,OR ,NOR ,XOR )
   → (case hd(d1)  
        BOOLEAN → is-boolean-tdesc?(d2) V argtypes2-error(op)(d1)(d2),
        BIT → is-bit-tdesc?(d2) V argtypes2-error(op)(d1)(d2),
        OTHERWISE → argtypes2-error(op)(d1)(d2)),
  (ADD ,SUB )
   → (case hd(d1)  
        (UNIVERSAL,INTEGER ,INTEGER )
         → match-types(d1)(d2) V argtypes2-error(op)(d1)(d2),
       otherwise error(cat("Argument type mismatch for operator: ")(op))(d1)(d2)))

89
(TIME_REAL) \rightarrow d_1 = d_2 \lor \text{argtypes2-error}(op)(d_1)(d_2),
\text{OTHERWISE} \rightarrow \text{argtypes2-error}(op)(d_1)(d_2),
\text{MUL}
\rightarrow (\text{case} \ \text{hd}(d_1))
\rightarrow (\text{UNIVERSAL_INTEGER,INTEGER,REAL})
\rightarrow \text{match-types}(d_1)(d_2) \lor \text{is-time-tdesc}(d_2),
\text{TIME}
\rightarrow \text{is-integer-tdesc}(d_2) \land \text{is-real-tdesc}(d_2),
\text{OTHERWISE} \rightarrow \text{argtypes2-error}(op)(d_1)(d_2),
\text{DIV}
\rightarrow (\text{case} \ \text{hd}(d_1))
\rightarrow (\text{UNIVERSAL_INTEGER,INTEGER,REAL})
\rightarrow \text{match-types}(d_1)(d_2) \lor \text{argtypes2-error}(op)(d_1)(d_2),
\text{TIME}
\rightarrow \text{is-integer-tdesc}(d_2) \land \text{is-real-tdesc}(d_2),
\text{OTHERWISE} \rightarrow \text{argtypes2-error}(op)(d_1)(d_2),
\text{(MOD,REM)}
\rightarrow (\text{case} \ \text{hd}(d_1))
\rightarrow (\text{UNIVERSAL_INTEGER,INTEGER})
\rightarrow \text{is-integer-tdesc}(d_2) \lor \text{argtypes2-error}(op)(d_1)(d_2),
\text{OTHERWISE} \rightarrow \text{argtypes2-error}(op)(d_1)(d_2),
\text{EXP}
\rightarrow (\text{case} \ \text{hd}(d_1))
\rightarrow (\text{UNIVERSAL_INTEGER,INTEGER,REAL})
\rightarrow \text{is-integer-tdesc}(d_2) \lor \text{argtypes2-error}(op)(d_1)(d_2),
\text{OTHERWISE} \rightarrow \text{argtypes2-error}(op)(d_1)(d_2),
\text{CONCAT}
\rightarrow (\text{is-bit-tdesc}(d_1))
\rightarrow \text{is-bit-tdesc}(d_2) \lor \text{is-bitvector-tdesc}(d_2),
\rightarrow \text{is-bit-tdesc}(d_2)
\rightarrow \text{is-bit-tdesc}(d_1) \land \text{is-bitvector-tdesc}(d_1),
\rightarrow \text{is-array-tdesc}(d_1) \land \text{is-array-tdesc}(d_2)
\rightarrow \text{match-array-type-names}(\text{idf}(d_1),\text{idf}(d_2))
\land \text{match-types}(\text{elty}(d_1),\text{elty}(d_2))
\land \text{argtypes2-error}(op)(d_1)(d_2)),
\text{(EQ,NE)} \rightarrow \text{match-types}(d_1,d_2) \lor \text{argtypes2-error}(op)(d_1)(d_2),
\text{(LT,LE,GT,GE)}
\rightarrow (\text{is-scalar-tdesc}(d_1) \land \text{is-scalar-tdesc}(d_2))
\rightarrow \text{match-types}(d_1,d_2) \lor \text{argtypes2-error}(op)(d_1)(d_2),
\rightarrow \text{is-bitvector-tdesc}(d_1) \land \text{is-bitvector-tdesc}(d_2)
\rightarrow \text{tt},
\rightarrow \text{argtypes2-error}(op)(d_1)(d_2),
\text{OTHERWISE} \rightarrow \text{error}(\text{cat}(\text{"Unrecognized Stage 3 WHDL operator: "})(op)))
\text{argtypes2-error}(op)(d_1)(d_2)
= \text{error}(\text{cat}(\text{"Operator "})(op)(\text{" not implemented for pair of types: "})(d_1)(d_2))
\text{restype2}(\text{binary-op})(d_1,d_2)(t)
= (\text{case} \ \text{binary-op})
\rightarrow (\text{AND,NAND,OR,NOR,XOR,ADD,SUB,MOD,REM,EXP})
\rightarrow \text{mk-type}(\text{((DUMMY VAL))})(d_1),
\text{MUL}
\rightarrow (\text{case} \ \text{hd}(d_1))
\rightarrow (\text{UNIVERSAL_INTEGER,INTEGER,REAL}) \rightarrow \text{mk-type}(\text{((DUMMY VAL))})(d_2),
\text{TIME} \rightarrow \text{mk-type}(\text{((DUMMY VAL))})(d_1),
\text{OTHERWISE} \rightarrow \text{error}(\text{"Shouldn't happen!")},
\text{DIV}
\rightarrow (\text{case} \ \text{hd}(d_1))
(UNIVERSAL_INTEGER, INTEGER, REAL) \rightarrow \text{mk-type}((\text{DUMMY VAL}))(d_2),

\text{TILE}
\rightarrow \text{(case }\text{hd}(d_2))
\begin{align*}
\text{(UNIVERSAL_INTEGER, INTEGER, REAL)} & \rightarrow \text{mk-type}((\text{DUMMY VAL}))(d_1), \\
\text{TILE} & \rightarrow \text{mk-type}((\text{DUMMY VAL}))(\text{univint-desc}(t)), \\
\text{OTHERWISE} & \rightarrow \text{error("Shouldn't happen!")}, \\
\text{CONCAT} & \rightarrow \text{mk-type}((\text{DUMMY VAL}))(\text{mk-concat-desc}(d_1)(d_2)(t)), \\
\text{OTHERWISE} & \rightarrow \text{error(cat("Unrecognized Stage 3 VHDL binary operator: ")(binary-op))}
\end{align*}

\text{mk-concat-desc}(d_1)(d_2)(t) = (\text{is-bit-desc}(d_1) \lor \text{is-bitvector-desc}(d_1))
\begin{align*}
\rightarrow \text{array-type-desc}
\begin{align*}
\text{(new-array-type-name}(\text{BIT VECTOR}))(e)(e)(t)(\text{direction}(d_1))(\text{lb}(d_1))(e)
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\begin{align*}
\begin{align*}
\text{(bit-type-desc}(t)), \\
\text{let } idf_1 = \text{idf}(d_1) \text{ in} \\
\text{array-type-desc}
\begin{align*}
\text{(new-array-type-name}(\text{consp}(idf_1)\rightarrow \text{hd}(idf_1), idf_1))(e)(e)(t)
\end{align*}
\text{(direction}(d_1))(\text{lb}(d_1))(e)(\text{elty}(d_1))
\end{align*}
\end{align*}

\text{resval2}(d_1,d_2)(op)(e_1,e_2) = (e_1 \neq \text{UNDEF} \lor e_2 \neq \text{UNDEF} \rightarrow \text{UNDEF}, \\
\text{let } \text{tg} = \text{tag}(d_1) \text{ in} \\
\begin{align*}
\begin{align*}
\text{(case } tg \\
\text{\text{\*BOOL*}}
\rightarrow \text{(case } op \\
\text{AND} & \rightarrow e_1 \land e_2, \\
\text{NAND} & \rightarrow \neg(e_1 \land e_2), \\
\text{OR} & \rightarrow e_1 \lor e_2, \\
\text{NOR} & \rightarrow \neg(e_1 \lor e_2), \\
\text{XOR} & \rightarrow (e_1 = e_2 \rightarrow \text{ff, tt}), \\
\text{EQ} & \rightarrow e_1 = e_2, \\
\text{NE} & \rightarrow e_1 \neq e_2, \\
\text{LT} & \rightarrow e_1 < e_2, \\
\text{LE} & \rightarrow e_1 \leq e_2, \\
\text{GT} & \rightarrow e_1 > e_2, \\
\text{GE} & \rightarrow e_1 \geq e_2, \\
\text{OTHERWISE} & \rightarrow \text{error}
\begin{align*}
\text{(cat("Unrecognized Stage 3 VHDL \text{\'boolean\'} binary operator: ")(op)).}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\text{\*BIT*}
\rightarrow \text{(case } op \\
\text{AND} & \rightarrow (e_1 = 1 \land e_2 = 1 \rightarrow \text{mk-bit-simp-symbol}(1), \text{mk-bit-simp-symbol}(0)), \\
\text{NAND} & \rightarrow (e_1 = 0 \lor e_2 = 0 \rightarrow \text{mk-bit-simp-symbol}(1), \text{mk-bit-simp-symbol}(0)), \\
\text{OR} & \rightarrow (e_1 = 1 \lor e_2 = 1 \rightarrow \text{mk-bit-simp-symbol}(1), \text{mk-bit-simp-symbol}(0)), \\
\text{NOR} & \rightarrow (e_1 = 0 \land e_2 = 0 \rightarrow \text{mk-bit-simp-symbol}(1), \text{mk-bit-simp-symbol}(0)), \\
\text{XOR} & \rightarrow (e_1 = e_2 \rightarrow \text{mk-bit-simp-symbol}(0), \text{mk-bit-simp-symbol}(1)), \\
\text{EQ} & \rightarrow e_1 = e_2, \\
\text{NE} & \rightarrow e_1 \neq e_2, \\
\text{LT} & \rightarrow e_1 = 0 \land e_2 = 1, \\
\text{LE} & \rightarrow e_1 = 0 \lor e_2 = 1, \\
\text{GT} & \rightarrow e_1 = 1 \land e_2 = 0, \\
\text{OTHERWISE} & \rightarrow \text{error}
\begin{align*}
\text{(cat("Unrecognized Stage 3 VHDL \text{\'bit\'} binary operator: ")(op)).}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\begin{align*}
\text{91}
\end{align*}
GE → e1 = 1 ∨ e2 = 0,
OTHERWISE
   → error
      (cat("Unrecognized Stage 3 VHDL 'bit' binary operator: ")(op)),
(*INT*, *TIME*)
→ (case op
   ADD → e1 + e2,
   SUB → e1 − e2,
   MUL → e1 × e2,
   DIV → (e2 = 0 → error("Illegal division by zero"), e1/e2),
   MOD → mod(e1,e2),
   REM → rem(e1,e2),
   EXP → e1^e2,
   EQ → e1 = e2,
   NE → e1 ≠ e2,
   LT → e1 < e2,
   LE → e1 ≤ e2,
   GT → e1 > e2,
   GE → e1 ≥ e2,
OTHERWISE
   → error
      (cat("Unrecognized Stage 3 VHDL 'integer' binary operator: ")(op)),
*REAL* → error(cat("Floating point operator not yet implemented: ")(op)),
*ENUMTYPE*
→ (case op
   EQ → e1 = e2,
   NE → e1 ≠ e2,
   LT → enum-lt(e1)(e2)(literals(d1)),
   LE → enum-le(e1)(e2)(literals(d1)),
   GT → enum-lt(e2)(e1)(literals(d1)),
   GE → enum-le(e2)(e1)(literals(d1)),
OTHERWISE
   → error
      (cat("Unrecognized Stage 3 VHDL 'enumeration type' binary operator: ")(op)),
*ARRAYTYPE* → *UNDEF*,
OTHERWISE
   → error(cat("Unrecognized Stage 3 VHDL binary operator type: ")(tg))

enum-lt(e1)(e2)(enum-lits)
= let elpos = position(e1)(enum-lits)
   and e2pos = position(e2)(enum-lits) in
   elpos < e2pos
enum-le(e1)(e2)(enum-lits)
= let elpos = position(e1)(enum-lits)
   and e2pos = position(e2)(enum-lits) in
   elpos ≤ e2pos

6.5.13 Primitive Semantic Equations

(N1) $\mathbb{N}[constant] = constant$

(B1) $\mathbb{B}[bitlit] = bitlit$
7 Interphase Abstract Syntax Tree Transformation

Owing to the relative simplicity of the Stage 1 VHDL language subset, Phases 1 and 2 of the Stage 1 VHDL translator were able to use the same abstract syntax.

Stage 2 VHDL was a considerably more sophisticated language subset. Consequently, it became convenient to allow Phase 2 of the VHDL translator for Stage 2 VHDL and subsequent stages — viz. Stage 3 VHDL — to employ a different abstract syntax for the language than does Phase 1, for reasons discussed below.

Accordingly, as the final act of Phase 1 translation of a given Stage 3 VHDL hardware description, an “interphase” abstract syntax tree transformation is performed that yields a new abstract syntax tree (AST) for use by Phase 2. This transformation does not modify the original AST. Although the resulting transformed AST may resemble the original in many respects, there will also be substantial differences.

We should recall that in Phase 1, when abstract syntax trees are occasionally injected into the TSE, it is their transformed versions that are used; this occurs with array type descriptors created by functions process-sldcdec and DT8, subprogram descriptors created by function process-subprog-body, and *SENS* (sensitivity list) descriptors updated with new refs by function SLT2.

7.1 Interphase Semantic Functions

The abstract syntax tree transformation is carried out by principal semantic functions DFX (design files), ENX (entity declarations), ARX (architecture bodies), PDX (port declarations), DX (declarations), CSX (concurrent statements), SLX (sensitivity lists), SSX (sequential statements), AX (case alternatives), DRX (discrete ranges), WX (waveforms), TRX (transactions), MEX (reference lists), and EX and RX (expressions). These are assisted by several important auxiliary semantic functions, most notably the function transform-name.

Following Phase 1 construction of the tree-structured environment (TSE), semantic function DFX is applied to the original AST to initiate the transformation, which uses (but does not modify) the TSE. Once the AST transformation is complete, Phase 1 auxiliary semantic function phase2 is invoked with the transformed AST and the TSE as syntactic and semantic arguments, respectively, to initiate Phase 2 translation (see Section 8).

Generally speaking, the AST-transforming semantic functions straightforwardly reconstruct their syntactic arguments from their transformed immediate syntactic constituents, with the following exceptions:

- transformation of PORT declarations into SIGNAL declarations
- “desugaring” of sensitivity lists in PROCESS statements: converting them into explicit final WAIT statements
- “desugaring” of concurrent signal assignment statements:

93
converting them into equivalent PROCESS statements

- "desugaring" of secondary units of physical type TIME:
  converting them into the base unit FS (femtoseconds)

- disambiguation of refs as either array references or subprogram calls

- overload resolution between BOOLEAN and BIT operators

- overload resolution between INTEGER and REAL operators

7.2 Transformed Abstract Syntax of Names

An important case in point is the translation of names, e.g. refs, which are heavily overloaded: the Phase 1 semantic function name-type, which checks them and determines their type, is necessarily complex. Given the identical abstract syntax, a Phase 2 semantic function for refs would exhibit analogous complexity; instead, it was deemed preferable to transform the abstract syntax of refs into a form more suitable for Phase 2.

Thus, the abstract syntax of refs used in Phase 1 is:

```
ref ::= REF name
name ::= id | name id | name expr*
```

while the abstract syntax of refs used in Phase 2 is:

```
ref ::= REF basic-ref
basic-ref ::= modifier+
modifier ::= SREF id+ id
  | INDEX expr
  | SELECTOR id
  | PARLIST expr*
```

Although not reflected in the syntax shown above, a basic-ref (basic reference) must begin with a simple reference SREF id+ id, which has for convenience been classified with the modifiers. The id is the root identifier, and id+ is the TSE access path for this ref. The structures following this root basic reference are called modifiers. An INDEX modifier denotes an array reference, a SELECTOR modifier denotes a record field access (not used in Stage 3 VHDL), and a PARLIST modifier denotes a subprogram call. This linear arrangement of a simple reference followed by zero or more modifiers makes the translation of refs in Phase 2 relatively straightforward, as the components of a ref are grouped from the left and thus a ref can be translated from left to right.
7.3 Interphase Semantic Equations

Most of the semantic equations for the interphase abstract syntax tree transformation, being straightforward, will be displayed without comment.

7.3.1 Stage 3 VHDL Design Files

(DFX1) \[
\text{DFX} \llcdot \text{DESIGN-FILE} \text{id} \text{ pkg-decl}^* \text{ pkg-body}^* \text{ use-clause}^* \text{ ent-decl} \text{ arch-body} \rrbracket (t) = \text{let } p_0 = \%e(\text{id}) \text{ in} \]
\[
\text{DESIGN-FILE} \text{.,id,DX} \llcdot \text{pkg-decl}^* \rrbracket (p_0)(t), \text{DX} \llcdot \text{pkg-body}^* \rrbracket (p_0)(t), \text{ENX} \llcdot \text{ent-decl} \rrbracket (p_0)(t), \text{ARX} \llcdot \text{arch-body} \rrbracket (p_0)(t))
\]

7.3.2 Entity Declarations

(ENX1) \[
\text{ENX} \llcdot \text{ENTITY} \text{id} \text{ port-decl}^* \text{ decl}^* \text{ opt-id} \rrbracket (p)(t) = \text{insert-phase1-hook} \]
\[
\text{ENTITY}.\text{id,DX} \llcdot \text{port-decl}^* \rrbracket (\%p(id))(t), \text{DX} \llcdot \text{decl}^* \rrbracket (\%p(id))(t), \text{opt-id}) \]
\[
\text{ent-decl})
\]

7.3.3 Architecture Bodies

(ARX1) \[
\text{ARX} \llcdot \text{ARCHITECTURE} \text{id}_1 \text{ id}_2 \text{ decl}^* \text{ con-stat}^* \text{ opt-id} \rrbracket (p)(t) = \text{let } p_1 = \%\%\%(p(id))(id_1) \text{ in} \]
\[
\text{ARCHITECTURE}.\text{id}_1,\text{id}_2,\text{DX} \llcdot \text{decl}^* \rrbracket (p_1)(t), \text{CSX} \llcdot \text{con-stat}^* \rrbracket (p_1)(t), \text{opt-id})
\]

7.3.4 Port Declarations

(PDX0) \[
\text{PDX} \llcdot \varepsilon \rrbracket (p)(t) = \varepsilon
\]

(PDX1) \[
\text{PDX} \llcdot \text{port-decl port-decl}^* \rrbracket (p)(t) = \text{cons(\text{PDX} \llcdot \text{port-decl} \rrbracket (p)(t), \text{PDX} \llcdot \text{port-decl}^* \rrbracket (p)(t))}
\]

(PDX2) \[
\text{PDX} \llcdot \text{DEC PORT id}^+ \text{ mode type-mark opt-expr} \rrbracket (p)(t) = (\text{DEC}, \text{SIG}, \text{id}^+, \text{type-mark}, \text{let } \text{expr} = \text{opt-expr} \text{ in} \text{second(\text{EX} \llcdot \text{expr} \rrbracket (p)(t))})
\]

(PDX3) \[
\text{PDX} \llcdot \text{SLCDEC PORT id}^+ \text{ mode slice-name opt-expr} \rrbracket (p)(t) = (\text{SLCDEC}, \text{SIG}, \text{id}^+, \text{let } \text{type-mark, discrete-range} = \text{slice-name} \text{ in} \text{type-mark DX} \llcdot \text{discrete-range} \rrbracket (p)(t), \text{let } \text{expr} = \text{opt-expr} \text{ in} \text{second(\text{EX} \llcdot \text{expr} \rrbracket (p)(t))})
\]
7.3.5 Declarations

(DX0) \[ \mathbf{DX} \mathbf{[} \epsilon \mathbf{]} \mathbf{(p)(t)} = \epsilon \]

(DX1) \[ \mathbf{DX} \mathbf{[} \text{decl \ decl}^* \mathbf{]} \mathbf{(p)(t)} = \text{cons} (\mathbf{DX} \mathbf{[} \text{decl} \mathbf{]} \mathbf{(p)(t)}, \mathbf{DX} \mathbf{[} \text{decl}^* \mathbf{]} \mathbf{(p)(t)}) \]

(DX2) \[ \mathbf{DX} \mathbf{[} \text{pkg-decl \ pkg-decl}^* \mathbf{]} \mathbf{(p)(t)} = \text{cons} (\mathbf{DX} \mathbf{[} \text{pkg-decl} \mathbf{]} \mathbf{(p)(t)}, \mathbf{DX} \mathbf{[} \text{pkg-decl}^* \mathbf{]} \mathbf{(p)(t)}) \]

(DX3) \[ \mathbf{DX} \mathbf{[} \text{pkg-body \ pkg-body}^* \mathbf{]} \mathbf{(p)(t)} = \text{cons} (\mathbf{DX} \mathbf{[} \text{pkg-body} \mathbf{]} \mathbf{(p)(t)}, \mathbf{DX} \mathbf{[} \text{pkg-body}^* \mathbf{]} \mathbf{(p)(t)}) \]

(DX4) \[ \mathbf{DX} \mathbf{[} \text{use-clause \ use-clause}^* \mathbf{]} \mathbf{(p)(t)} = \text{cons} (\mathbf{DX} \mathbf{[} \text{use-clause} \mathbf{]} \mathbf{(p)(t)}, \mathbf{DX} \mathbf{[} \text{use-clause}^* \mathbf{]} \mathbf{(p)(t)}) \]

(DX5) \[ \mathbf{DX} \mathbf{[} \text{DEC \ object-class \ id}^* \text{ \ type-mark \ opt-expr} \mathbf{]} \mathbf{(p)(t)} = (\text{DEC}, \text{object-class}, \text{id}^*, \text{type-mark,}
\text{let expr = opt-expr in}
\text{second} (\mathbf{EX} \mathbf{[} \text{expr} \mathbf{]} \mathbf{(p)(t)})) \]

(DX6) \[ \mathbf{DX} \mathbf{[} \text{SLCDEC \ object-class \ id}^* \text{ \ slice-name \ opt-expr} \mathbf{]} \mathbf{(p)(t)} = (\text{SLCDEC}, \text{object-class}, \text{id}^*,
\text{let (type-mark, discrete-range) = slice-name in}
\text{(type-mark,} \mathbf{DX} \mathbf{[} \text{discrete-range} \mathbf{]} \mathbf{(p)(t)}),
\text{let expr = opt-expr in}
\text{second} (\mathbf{EX} \mathbf{[} \text{expr} \mathbf{]} \mathbf{(p)(t)})) \]

(DX7) \[ \mathbf{DX} \mathbf{[} \text{ETDEC \ id}^* \mathbf{]} \mathbf{(p)(t)} = (\text{ETDEC}, \text{id}, \text{id}^*) \]

(DX8) \[ \mathbf{DX} \mathbf{[} \text{ATDEC \ id \ discrete-range \ type-mark} \mathbf{]} \mathbf{(p)(t)} = (\text{ATDEC}, \text{id}, \mathbf{DX} \mathbf{[} \text{discrete-range} \mathbf{]} \mathbf{(p)(t)}, \text{type-mark}) \]

(DX9) \[ \mathbf{DX} \mathbf{[} \text{PACKAGE \ id \ decl}^* \text{ \ opt-id} \mathbf{]} \mathbf{(p)(t)} = (\text{PACKAGE}, \text{id}, \mathbf{DX} \mathbf{[} \text{decl}^* \mathbf{]} \mathbf{(p)(id)}(t), \text{opt-id}) \]

(DX10) \[ \mathbf{DX} \mathbf{[} \text{PACKAGEBODY \ id \ decl}^* \text{ \ opt-id} \mathbf{]} \mathbf{(p)(t)} = \text{let d = t(p)(id) in}
\text{let q = (path(d))(id) in}
\text{(PACKAGEBODY}, \text{id}, \mathbf{DX} \mathbf{[} \text{decl}^* \mathbf{]} \mathbf{(q)(t), \text{opt-id})} \]

(DX11) \[ \mathbf{DX} \mathbf{[} \text{PROCEDURE \ id \ proc-par-spec}^* \mathbf{]} \mathbf{(p)(t)} = \text{let d = t(p)(id) in}
\text{(null(body(d))) \rightarrow error(cat("Missing subprogram body: ")(name of d))),}
\text{(PROCEDURE}, \text{id, proc-par-spec}^*) \]

(DX12) \[ \mathbf{DX} \mathbf{[} \text{FUNCTION \ id \ func-par-spec}^* \text{ \ type-mark} \mathbf{]} \mathbf{(p)(t)} = \text{let d = t(p)(id) in}
\text{(null(body(d))) \rightarrow error(cat("Missing subprogram body: ")(name of d))),}
\text{(FUNCTION}, \text{id, func-par-spec}^*, \text{type-mark}) \]

(DX13) \[ \mathbf{DX} \mathbf{[} \text{SUBPROGBODY \ subprog-spec \ decl}^* \text{ \ seq-stat}^* \text{ \ opt-id} \mathbf{]} \mathbf{(p)(t)} = \text{let (tg, id, par-spec}^*, \text{type-mark) = subprog-spec in}
\text{let p_1 = (p)(id) in}
\text{(SUBPROGBODY),}
\text{let decl = subprog-spec in}
\text{\[ \mathbf{DX} \mathbf{[} \text{decl} \mathbf{]} \mathbf{(p)(t)}, \mathbf{DX} \mathbf{[} \text{decl}^* \mathbf{]} \mathbf{(p_1)(t)}, \mathbf{SSX} \mathbf{[} \text{seq-stat}^* \mathbf{]} \mathbf{(p_1)(t), \text{opt-id})} \]}

96
(DX14) $$\text{DX} \ [ \text{USE dotted-name}^+] \ (p)(t) = (\text{USE dotted-name}^+)$$

(DX15) $$\text{DX} \ [ \text{STDEC id type-mark opt-discrete-range} ] \ (p)(t)
= (\text{STDEC id, type-mark, }
\text{null(opt-discrete-range)} \rightarrow \epsilon,
\text{let } (\text{direction, expr1, expr2}) = \text{opt-discrete-range in }
\text{(direction, second(EX expr1)} \ (p)(t)), \text{second(EX expr2)} \ (p)(t))))$$

(DX16) $$\text{DX} \ [ \text{ITDEC id discrete-range} ] \ (p)(t)
= (\text{ITDEC id, }
\text{let } (\text{direction, expr1, expr2}) = \text{discrete-range in }
\text{(direction, second(EX expr1)} \ (p)(t)), \text{second(EX expr2)} \ (p)(t))))$$

7.3.6 Concurrent Statements

(CSX0) $$\text{CSX} [ \epsilon ] \ (p)(t) = \epsilon$$

(CSX1) $$\text{CSX} [ \text{con-stat con-stat*} ] \ (p)(t)
= \text{cons(CSX con-stat} \ (p)(t), \text{CSX con-stat*} \ (p)(t))$$

(CSX2) $$\text{CSX} [ \text{PROCESS id ref* decl* seq-stat* opt-id} ] \ (p)(t)
= \text{let } p_i = \%\text{(p)(id)} \text{ in }
\text{(PROCESS id, DX decl*} \ (p_i)(t),
\text{let seq-stat* = (null(seq-stat*)}
\rightarrow ((\text{WAIT, (AT, mk-atmark()), ref*,}, \epsilon, \epsilon)),
\text{null(ref*)} \rightarrow \text{seq-stat*},
\text{append}
\text{(seq-stat*,}
\text{(WAIT, (AT, mk-atmark()), ref*,}, \epsilon, \epsilon)))) \text{ in }
\text{SSX seq-stat*} \ (p_i)(t), \text{opt-id})$$

(CSX3) $$\text{CSX} [ \text{SEL-SIGASSN atmark delay-type id expr ref selected-waveform*} ] \ (p)(t)
= \text{let } \text{expr* = cons(expr,}
\text{collect-expressions-from-selected-waveforms}
\text{(selected-waveform*) in }
\text{let } \text{ref* = delete-duplicates}
\text{(collect-signals-from-expr-list(expr*)} (t)(p)(\epsilon) \text{ in }
\text{let case-alt* = construct-case-alternatives}
\text{(ref)(delay-type)(selected-waveform*) in }
\text{let case-stat = (CASE atmark, expr, case-alt*) in }
\text{let process-stat = (PROCESS id, ref*, \epsilon, (case-stat, id) in }
\text{insert-phase1-hook(CSX process-stat} \ (p)(t))(con-stat)$$

(CSX4) $$\text{CSX} [ \text{COND-SIGASSN atmark delay-type id ref cond-waveform* waveform} ] \ (p)(t)
= \text{let } \text{expr* = nconc}
\text{(collect-expressions-from-conditional-waveforms}
\text{(cond-waveform*),}
\text{collect-transaction-expressions(second(waveform))) in }
\text{let ref* = delete-duplicates}
\text{(collect-signals-from-expr-list(expr*)} (t)(p)(\epsilon) \text{ in }
\text{(null(cond-waveform*)}
\rightarrow \text{let sig-assn-stat = (SIGASSN atmark, delay-type, ref, waveform) in }
\text{let process-stat = (PROCESS id, ref*, \epsilon, (sig-assn-stat, id) in }$$

97
insert-phase1-hook(CSX [[ process-stat ]] (p)(t))(con-stat),
let cond-part* = construct-cond-parts
   (ref)(delay-type)(cond-waveform*)
and else-part = ((SIGASSN ,(AT ,mk-atmark()), delay-type, ref, waveform)) in
let if-stat = (IF ,atmark, cond-part*, else-part) in
let process-stat = (PROCESS ,id, ref*, e,(if-stat), id) in
insert-phase1-hook(CSX [[ process-stat ]] (p)(t))(con-stat))

7.3.7 Sensitivity Lists

(SLX0) SLX [[ ε ]] (p)(t) = ε

(SLX1) SLX [[ ref ref* ]] (p)(t) = cons(SLX [[ ref ]] (p)(t), SLX [[ ref* ]] (p)(t))

(SLX2) SLX [[ REF name ref* ]] (p)(t) = let expr = ref in
               second(ΕΧ [[ expr ]] (p)(t))

7.3.8 Sequential Statements

(SSX1) SSX [[ seq-stat seq-stat* ]] (p)(t) = cons(SSX [[ seq-stat ]] (p)(t), SSX [[ seq-stat* ]] (p)(t))

(SSX2) SSX [[ NULL atmark ]] (p)(t) = (NULL , atmark)

(SSX3) SSX [[ VARASSN atmark ref expr ]] (p)(t) = (VARASSN , atmark,
               let expr0 = ref in
               second(ΕΧ [[ expr0 ]] (p)(t)), second(ΕΧ [[ expr ]] (p)(t)))

(SSX4) SSX [[ SIGASSN atmark delay-waveform ]] (p)(t) = (SIGASSN , atmark, delay-type,
               let expr = ref in
               second(ΕΧ [[ expr ]] (p)(t)), WX [[ waveform ]] (p)(t))

(SSX5) SSX [[ IF atmark cond-part* else-part ]] (p)(t) = let seq-stat* = else-part in
               (IF , atmark, transform-if((cond-part*) (p)(t), SSX [[ seq-stat* ]] (p)(t))
transform-if((cond-part*) (p)(t))
= (null((cond-part*)) = ε,
   let (expr, seq-stat*) = hd((cond-part*)) in
   cons(second(ΕΧ [[ expr ]] (p)(t)), SSX [[ seq-stat* ]] (p)(t)),
   transform-if(t((cond-part*)) (p)(t))
)

(SSX6) SSX [[ CASE atmark expr case-alt*]] (p)(t) = (CASE , atmark, second(ΕΧ [[ expr ]] (p)(t)), AX [[ case-alt* ]] (p)(t))

(SSX7) SSX [[ LOOP atmark id seq-stat* opt-id ]] (p)(t) = (LOOP , atmark, id, SSX [[ seq-stat* ]] (%(p)(id))(t), opt-id)
(SSX8) \( \text{SSX} \left[ \text{WHILE} \ atmark \ id \ expr \ seq-stat^* \ opt-id \right] \ (p)(t) \\
= (\text{WHILE}, \ atmark, \ id, \ second(\text{EX} \ [ expr ] \ (\% (p)(id))(t)), \\
\text{SSX} \ [ seq-stat^* ] \ (\% (p)(id))(t), \ opt-id) \)

(SSX9) \( \text{SSX} \left[ \text{FOR} \ atmark \ id \ ref \ \text{discrete-range} \ seq-stat^* \ opt-id \right] \ (p)(t) \\
= (\text{FOR}, \ atmark, \ id, \ second(\text{EX} \ [ ref ] \ (\% (p)(id))(t)), \\
\text{DRX} \ [ \text{discrete-range} ] \ (\% (p)(id))(t), \text{SSX} \ [ seq-stat^* ] \ (\% (p)(id))(t), \ opt-id) \)

(SSX10) \( \text{SSX} \left[ \text{EXIT} \ atmark \ opt-dotted-name \ opt-expr \right] \ (p)(t) \\
= (\text{EXIT}, \ atmark, \ opt-dotted-name, \\
let \ expr = \ opt-expr in \\
second(\text{EX} \ [ expr ] \ (p)(t))) \)

(SSX11) \( \text{SSX} \left[ \text{CALL} \ atmark \ ref \right] \ (p)(t) \\
= (\text{CALL}, \ atmark, \ ref, \\
let \ expr = \ ref in \\
second(\text{EX} \ [ expr ] \ (p)(t))) \)

(SSX12) \( \text{SSX} \left[ \text{RETURN} \ atmark \ opt-expr \right] \ (p)(t) \\
= (\text{RETURN}, \ atmark, \\
let \ expr = \ opt-expr in \\
second(\text{EX} \ [ expr ] \ (p)(t))) \)

(SSX13) \( \text{SSX} \left[ \text{WAIT} \ atmark \ ref^* \ opt-expr_1 \ opt-expr_2 \right] \ (p)(t) \\
= \text{let} \ expr_1 = \ opt-expr_1 \\
\text{and} \ expr_2 = \ opt-expr_2 \ in \\
(\text{WAIT}, \ atmark, \ \text{MAX} \ [ ref^* ] \ (p)(t), \ second(\text{EX} \ [ expr_1 ] \ (p)(t)), \\
second(\text{EX} \ [ expr_2 ] \ (p)(t))) \)

7.3.9 Case Alternatives

(AX0) \( \text{AX} \ [ \epsilon ] \ (p)(t) = \epsilon \)

(AX1) \( \text{AX} \ [ \text{case-alt case-alt}^* ] \ (p)(t) \\
= \text{cons}(\text{AX} \ [ \text{case-alt} ] \ (p)(t), \text{AX} \ [ \text{case-alt}^* ] \ (p)(t)) \)

(AX2) \( \text{AX} \ [ \text{CASECHOICE} \ \text{discrete-range}^* \ seq-stat^* ] \ (p)(t) \\
= (\text{CASECHOICE}, \text{DRX} \ [ \text{discrete-range}^* ] \ (p)(t), \text{SSX} \ [ seq-stat^* ] \ (p)(t)) \)

(AX3) \( \text{AX} \ [ \text{CASEOTHERS} \ seq-stat^* ] \ (p)(t) = (\text{CASEOTHERS}, \text{SSX} \ [ seq-stat^* ] \ (p)(t)) \)

7.3.10 Discrete Ranges

(DRX0) \( \text{DRX} \ [ \epsilon ] \ (p)(t) = \epsilon \)

(DRX1) \( \text{DRX} \ [ \text{discrete-range} \ \text{discrete-range}^* ] \ (p)(t) \\
= \text{cons}(\text{DRX} \ [ \text{discrete-range} ] \ (p)(t), \text{DRX} \ [ \text{discrete-range}^* ] \ (p)(t)) \)

(DRX2) \( \text{DRX} \ [ \text{discrete-range} ] \ (p)(t) \\
= \text{let} \ {\text{direction}, \text{expr}_1, \text{expr}_2} = \text{discrete-range} \ \text{in} \\
{\text{direction}, \second(\text{EX} \ [ \text{expr}_1 ] \ (p)(t)), \second(\text{EX} \ [ \text{expr}_2 ] \ (p)(t)))} \)

99
7.3.11 Waveforms and Transactions

(WX1) $WX \ (WAVE \ transaction^+ \ ) \ (p)(t) = (WAVE, TRX \ (transaction^+ \ ) \ (p)(t))$

(TRX1) $TRX \ (transaction \ transaction^* \ ) \ (p)(t)$
$= (null(transaction^*)) \rightarrow (TRX \ (transaction \ ) \ (p)(t))$
$let \ transaction^+ = transaction^* \ in$
$cons(TRX \ (transaction \ ) \ (p)(t), TRX \ (transaction^+ \ ) \ (p)(t))$

(TRX2) $TRX \ (TRANS \ expr \ opt-exp \ ) \ (p)(t)$
$= (TRANS , second(EX \ [ expr \ ] \ (p)(t)),$
$let \ expr_1 = opt-exp \ in$
$second(EX \ [ expr; \ ] \ (p)(t))$

7.3.12 Expressions

(MEX0) $MEX \ [ \ v \ ] \ (p)(t) = v$

(MEX1) $MEX \ [ \ ref \ ref^* \ ] \ (p)(t) = cons(second(EX \ [ ref \ ] \ (p)(t)), MEX \ [ ref^* \ ] \ (p)(t))$

(EX0) $EX \ [ \ v \ ] \ (p)(t) = (void-type-desc(t), v)$

(EX1) $EX \ [ \ FALSE \ ] \ (p)(t) = (bool-type-desc(t), (FALSE))$

(EX2) $EX \ [ \ TRUE \ ] \ (p)(t) = (bool-type-desc(t), (TRUE))$

(EX3) $EX \ [ \ BIT \ bitlit \ ] \ (p)(t) = (bit-type-desc(t), (BIT , bitlit))$

(EX4) $EX \ [ \ NUM \ constant \ ] \ (p)(t) = (int-type-desc(t), (NUM , constant))$

(EX5) $EX \ [ \ TIME \ constant \ time-unit \ ] \ (p)(t)$
$= let \ normalized-constant = (case \ time-unit$
$FS \rightarrow N \ [ \ \ constant \ ] ,$
$PS \rightarrow 1000 \times N \ [ \ \ constant \ ] ,$
$NS \rightarrow 1000000 \times N \ [ \ \ constant \ ] ,$
$US \rightarrow 1000000000 \times N \ [ \ \ constant \ ] ,$
$MS \rightarrow 1000000000000 \times N \ [ \ \ constant \ ] ,$
$SEC \rightarrow 1000000000000000 \times N \ [ \ \ constant \ ] ,$
$MIN \rightarrow 60 \times (1000000000000000 \times N \ [ \ \ constant \ ] ),$
$HR \rightarrow 3600 \times (1000000000000000 \times N \ [ \ \ constant \ ] ),$
$OTHERWISE$
$\rightarrow \ \ error$
$cat("Illegal \ unit \ name \ for \ physical \ type \ TIME: \ ")$
$(time-unit))) \ in$
$(time-type-desc(t),(TIME , normalized-constant,FS))$

(EX6) $EX \ [ \ CHAR \ constant \ ] \ (p)(t)$
$= let \ d = lookup(t)((STANDARD) \ ) \ (expr) \ in$
$(type(d),(CHAR , constant))$

(EX7) $EX \ [ \ BITSTR \ bit-lit^* \ ] \ (p)(t) = (\epsilon, (BITSTR , bit-lit*))$

(EX8) $EX \ [ \ STR \ char-lit^* \ ] \ (p)(t) = (\epsilon, (STR , char-lit*))$

(EX9) $EX \ [ \ REF \ name \ ] \ (p)(t) = transform-name(name)(\epsilon)(\epsilon)(p)(t)$
transform-name(name)(w)(ast\_t)(p)(t)  
= (null(w))  
  → let w\_1 = lookup(t)(p)(e)(hd(name)) in  
  (w\_1 = *UNBOUND* → error(cat("Unknown identifier: ")($p(hd(name))))),  
  (second(tmode(w\_1))= TYP → transform-name(tl(name))(w\_1)(e)(p)(t),  
  transform-name  
  (tl(name))(w\_1)(((SREF ,path(tdesc(w\_1)),idf(tdesc(w\_1))))(p)(t))),  
  let d = tdesc(w)  
  and tm = tmode(w) in  
  (null(name))  
  → (second(tm)= TYP → transform-name-aux(*CONVERSION* )d)(ast\_t),  
  transform-name-aux(tg)(d)(ast\_t))  
  let x = hd(name) in  
  (consp(x))  
  → let ast\_t = transform-list(x)(p)(t) in  
  (second(tm)= TYP  
  → transform-name  
  (tl(name))(w)(((TYPECONV ,hd(ast\_t),%(path(d))(idf(d))))(p)(t),  
  second(tm)= OBJ ∧ is-array-tdesc?(d)  
  → transform-name  
  (tl(name))(((tm,elty(d)))  
  (nconc(ast\_t,((INDEX ,hd(ast\_t)))))(p)(t),  
  (second(tm)= OBJ ∧ is-array?(type(d)))  
  ∨ (second(tm)∈ (REF VAL) ∧ is-array-tdesc?(d))  
  → transform-name  
  (tl(name))  
  (((second(tm)= OBJ  
  → mk-type(tmode(type(d)))(elty(tdesc(type(d)))),  
  mk-type(tm)(elty(d))))  
  (nconc(ast\_t,((INDEX ,hd(ast\_t)))))(p)(t),  
  transform-name  
  (tl(name))(extract-rtype(d))  
  (nconc(ast\_t,((PARLIST ,ast\_t))))(p)(t)),  
  (second(tm)= OBJ ∧ is-record?(type(d)))  
  ∨ (second(tm)∈ (REF VAL) ∧ is-record-tdesc?(d))  
  → let d\_1 = (second(tm)= OBJ → tdesc(type(d)), d) in  
  let d\_2 = lookup-record-field(components(d\_1))(x) in  
  transform-name  
  (tl(name))(mk-type(tm)(d\_2))(nconc(ast\_t,((SELECTOR ,x))))  
  (p)(t),  
  second(tm)= OBJ ∧ is-record-tdesc?(d)  
  → let d\_2 = lookup-record-field(components(d))(x) in  
  transform-name  
  (tl(name))(mk-type(tm)(d\_2))(nconc(ast\_t,((SELECTOR ,x))))  
  (p)(t),  
  let w\_1 = lookup-local(x)(%(path(d))(idf(d)))(p)(t) in  
  (w\_1 = *UNBOUND*  
  → error(cat("Unknown identifier: ")($%(path(d))(idf(d))(x))),  
  transform-name  
  (tl(name))(w\_1)(((SREF ,path(tdesc(w\_1)),idf(tdesc(w\_1))))(p)(t))))  
  transform-name-aux(tg)(d)(ast)  
  = (case tg  
  *OBJECT* → (second(type(d)),(REF ,ast)),  
  *ENUMELT* → (second(type(d)),(ENUMUNIT ,idf(d)))

101
(*PROCEDURE*, *FUNCTION*)
→ (second(rtype(hd(signatures(d)))),
  (REF ,nconc(ast,((PARLIST ,e))))),
*CONVERSION* → (d,ast),
*PACKAGE* → (d,(REF ,ast)),
OTHERWISE → (d,(REF ,ast))

transform-list(x)(p)(t)
= (null(x)→ ε,
let expr = hd(x) in
  cons(second(ΕX [[ expr ]] (p)(t),transform-list(tl(x))(p)(t))))

The functions transform-name, transform-name-aux, and transform-list produce the linear form of the basic references discussed above.

(EX10) EX [[ PAGGR expr* ]] (p)(t)
= (length(expr*)= 1
→ let expr = hd(expr*) in
  EX [[ expr ]] (p)(t),
  (ε,(PAGGR ,ex-paggr(expr*))(p)(t))))

(EX11) EX [[ unary-op expr ]] (p)(t)
= let (d,e) = EX [[ expr ]] (p)(t) in
  (case unary-op
    PLUS → (d,e),
    NOT → (d,(scalar-op(unary-op)(d),e)),
    NEG → (d,(scalar-op(unary-op)(d),e)),
    ABS → (d,(scalar-op(unary-op)(d),e)),
    OTHERWISE
  ← error
  (cat("Unrecognized Stage 3 VHDL unary operator: ")(unary-op))))

(EX12) EX [[ binary-op expr1 expr2 ]] (p)(t)
= let (d1,e1) = EX [[ expr1 ]] (p)(t) in
  let (d2,e2) = EX [[ expr2 ]] (p)(t) in
  (d1,(scalar-op(binary-op)(d1),e1,e2))

(EX13) EX [[ relational-op expr1 expr2 ]] (p)(t)
= let (d1,e1) = EX [[ expr1 ]] (p)(t) in
  let (d2,e2) = EX [[ expr2 ]] (p)(t) in
  (bool-type-desc(t),(scalar-op(relational-op)(d1),e1,e2))

scalar-op(op)(d)
= (is-bit-tdesc?(d)∨ is-bitvector-tdesc?(d)→ bits-op(op),
  is-real-tdesc?(d)→ real-op(op),
  op)

bits-op(op)
= (case op
  EQ → EQ ,
  NE → NE ,
  LT → LT ,
  LE → LE ,
  GT → GT ,
  GE → GE ,
  otherwise → error)

102
NOT -> BNOT,
AND -> BAND,
NAND -> BNAND,
OR -> BOR,
NOR -> BNOR,
XOR -> BXOR,
OTHERWISE -> error(cat(Undefined bitwise operator: )\(\text{op}\)))

\[
real\text{-}op(op) = (\text{case } op
\begin{align*}
&EQ -> EQ, \\
&NE -> NE, \\
&LT -> RLT, \\
&LE -> RLE, \\
&GT -> RGT, \\
&GE -> RGE, \\
&NEG -> RNEG, \\
&ABS -> RABS, \\
&ADD -> RPLUS, \\
&SUB -> RMINUS, \\
&MUL -> RTIMES, \\
&DIV -> RDIV, \\
&EXP -> REXPT, \\
&OTHERWISE -> error(cat(Undefined 'real' operator: )\(\text{op}\)))
\end{align*}
\]

The functions scalar-op, bits-op, and real-op do overload resolution between INTEGER, BIT, and REAL operators.

(RX1) \( \text{RX} [ \text{expr} ] (p)(t) = \text{EX} [ \text{expr} ] (p)(t) \)
Phase 2: State Delta Generation

If Phase 1 of the Stage 3 VHDL translator completes without error, then after the interphase abstract syntax tree transformation has been accomplished (see Section 7), Phase 2, state delta generation, can proceed. Several kinds of checks have already been performed on the hardware description in Phase 1, the most significant being the detection of missing prior declarations of items such as variables and labels, the improper use of names, and static type checking. Thus, these checks do not have to be duplicated in Phase 2.

Phase 2 receives from Phase 1 the transformed abstract syntax tree (AST) for the hardware description, together with the tree-structured environment (TSE) — a complete record of the name/attribute associations corresponding to the hardware description's declarations and whose structure reflects that of the description. The TSE remains fixed throughout Phase 2. It contains all definitions needed to execute its corresponding Stage 3 VHDL hardware description, and Phase 1 has ensured that only that portion of the TSE visible at any given textual point of the description can be accessed during Phase 2. With the aid of the TSE, Phase 2 incrementally generates SDVS Simpler assertions and state deltas.

8.1 Phase 2 Semantic Domains and Functions

The formal description of Phase 2 translation consists of semantic domains and semantic functions, the latter being functions from syntactic to semantic domains. Compound semantic domains are defined in terms of primitive semantic domains. Similarly, primitive semantic functions are unspecified (their definitions being understood implicitly) and the remaining semantic functions are defined (by syntactic cases) via semantic equations.

The principal Phase 2 semantic functions (and corresponding Stage 3 VHDL language constructs to which they assign meanings) are: DF (design files), EN (entity declarations), AR (architecture bodies), D (declarations), CS (concurrent statements), SS (sequential statements), W (waveforms), TRM and TR (transactions), ME and MR (expression lists), E and R (expressions), T (expression types), B (bit literals), and N (numeric literals).

Each of the principal semantic functions requires an appropriate syntactic argument — an abstract syntactic object (tree) produced by the interphase abstract syntax tree transformation (see Section 7). Most of the semantic functions take (at least) the following additional arguments:

- the tree-structured environment (TSE) generated in Phase 1;
- a path, indicating the currently “visible” portion of the TSE;
- a continuation, specifying which Phase 2 semantic function to invoke next;
- a universe structure; and
- an execution stack.
In the absence of errors, the Phase 2 semantic functions return a list of Simplifier assertions and state deltas. Moreover, E and R also return a translated expression and list of guard formulas. Guard formulas are inserted in the precondition of generated state deltas to ensure that certain conditions are met in the proof in which the state deltas appear. For example, if an array name is indexed by an expression, then Phase 2 generates a guard formula asserting that the index value is not out of range.

The execution state manipulated by Phase 2 translation involves two components: a universe structure (see Section 8.2.2) and an execution stack (see Section 8.2.3). An analogy with conventional denotational semantics can be applied: the execution state corresponds to the store, translated expressions and guard formulas correspond to expression values, and state delta/assertion lists correspond to non-error final answers.

When state deltas are generated by a semantic function, the continuation that is input to that function plays a slightly unconventional role: the result of applying to an execution state the continuation, or other continuations derived from the continuation, is appended to the postconditions of the generated state deltas. In the absence of errors, the item appended represents a list of state deltas. Such a continuation is evaluated and applied only when the state delta in whose postcondition it appears is applied.

For example, an IF statement having no ELSE part generates two state deltas: one for the case in which its condition evaluates to true, the other for the false case. The continuation for the true case represents the execution of the body of the IF statement succeeded by the execution of the statement following the IF statement. The continuation for the false case skips the body, and proceeds directly to the statement following the IF statement. Whichever of these two state deltas is applied determines which continuation is evaluated and applied to an execution state, and therefore which additional state deltas are subsequently generated.

### 8.1.1 Phase 2 Semantic Domains

The semantic domains and function types for Phase 2 of the Stage 3 VHDL translator are as follows.

**Primitive Semantic Domains**

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Bool} & = \{\text{FALSE, TRUE}\} \\
\text{Bit} & = \{(\text{BS 0 1}), (\text{BS 1 1})\} \\
\text{Char} & = \{(\text{CHAR 0}), \ldots, (\text{CHAR 127})\} \\
n : \mathbb{N} & = \{0, 1, 2, \ldots\}
\end{align*}
\]

- Simplifier propositional (boolean) constants
- Simplifier bit constants (length 1 bitstrings)
- Simplifier character constants
- Simplifier natural number constants

- id : Id
  - identifiers
- SysId
  - system-generated identifiers (disjoint from Id)

- t : TEnv
  - tree-structured environments (TSEs)
- d : Desc
  - descriptors (see Section 6.2)
- v : UStruct
  - universe structures (see Section 8.2.2)
stk : Stk execution stacks (see Section 8.2.3)
e : TExpr translated expressions
trans : TTrans translated transactions
f, guard : GForm lists of guard formulas
sd : SD state deltas
Assert SDVS Simpler assertions
Error error messages

Compound Semantic Domains

elbl : Elbl = Id + SysId TSE edge labels
p, q: Path = Elbl* TSE paths
qname: Name = Elbl (. Elbl)* qualified names
d : Dv = Desc denotable values (descriptors)
r : Env = Id → (Dv + {*UNBOUND*}) environments

Tmode = {PATH} × Id* +
{(CONST, VAR, SIG, DUMMY} ×
{VAL, OUT, REF, OBJ, ACC, TYP})
type modes

w : Type = Tmode × Desc types

u : Dc = UStruct → Stk → Ans declaration & concurrent statement continuations
c : Sc = Dc sequential statement continuations
k : Ec = (TExpr × GForm) → Sc expression continuations
h : Mc = (TExpr* × GForm*) → Sc expression list continuations
wave-cont : Wc = (TTrans* × GForm*) → Sc waveform continuations
trans-cont : Tc = (TTrans × GForm) → Sc transaction continuations

Ans = (SD + Assert)* + Error final answers

8.1.2 Phase 2 Semantic Functions

The semantic functions for Phase 2 of the Stage 3 VHDL translator are as follows.

DF : Design → TEnv → Ans design file dynamic semantics
EN : Ent → TEnv → Path → Dc → Dc entity declaration dynamic semantics
AR : Arch → TEnv → Path → Dc → Dc architecture body dynamic semantics
D : Dec* → TEnv → Path → Dc → Dc declaration dynamic semantics

107
CS : \( CStat^* \rightarrow TEnv \rightarrow Path \rightarrow Dc \rightarrow Dc \) concurrent statement dynamic semantics

SS : \( SStat^* \rightarrow TEnv \rightarrow Path \rightarrow Sc \rightarrow Sc \) sequential statement dynamic semantics

W : \( Wave \rightarrow TEnv \rightarrow Path \rightarrow Wc \rightarrow Sc \) waveform dynamic semantics

TRM : \( Trans^* \rightarrow TEnv \rightarrow Path \rightarrow Wc \rightarrow Sc \) transaction list dynamic semantics

TR : \( Trans \rightarrow TEnv \rightarrow Path \rightarrow Tc \rightarrow Sc \) transaction dynamic semantics

ME : \( Expr^* \rightarrow TEnv \rightarrow Path \rightarrow Mc \rightarrow Sc \) expression list dynamic semantics \((l-values)\)

MR : \( Expr^* \rightarrow TEnv \rightarrow Path \rightarrow Mc \rightarrow Sc \) expression list dynamic semantics \((r-values)\)

E : \( Expr \rightarrow TEnv \rightarrow Path \rightarrow Ec \rightarrow Sc \) expression dynamic semantics \((l-values)\)

R : \( Expr \rightarrow TEnv \rightarrow Path \rightarrow Ec \rightarrow Sc \) expression dynamic semantics \((r-values)\)

T : \( Expr \rightarrow TEnv \rightarrow Path \rightarrow Desc \) expression types

B : \( BitLit \rightarrow Bit \) bit values of bit literals (primitive)

N : \( NumLit \rightarrow N \) integer values of numeric literals (primitive)
8.2 Phase 2 Execution State

As mentioned in Section 8.1, the execution state manipulated by Phase 2 translation consists of a universe structure and an execution stack. The purpose of this section is to elucidate the nature and role of these aspects of the execution state.

8.2.1 Unique Name Qualification

Except for quantification, the language of state deltas has no scoping, i.e., it is "flat." Even with quantification, the state deltas generated by the Stage 3 VHDL translator certainly do not have a scoping structure that naturally parallels the scopes of their corresponding Stage 3 VHDL hardware description. Furthermore, even if there were such a correspondence between source (Stage 3 VHDL) and target (state deltas) scopes, it would still be convenient to generate unique names for the SDVS user to use in proofs.

For example, a PROCESS statement may contain a declaration of a variable x of the same name as a signal in the enclosing architecture body. The inner instance of x can be distinguished from the outer instance by prefixing or qualifying it with the name (user-supplied or system-generated) of the process in which the inner instance is declared. We shall call such a qualified name, derived from the static structure of the Stage 3 VHDL hardware description, a statically uniquely qualified name or SUQN. At the beginning of Phase 2 translation (after the interphase AST transformation — see Section 7), the SUQN of any object (for which such a name makes sense) is recorded in the qid field associated with the object in the TSE.

Another important kind of unique name qualification is based on the dynamic execution of a Stage 3 VHDL description. A program unit can be reentered, either by repetition or recursion, and local declarations in the reentered program will be re-elaborated, creating new dynamic instances of entities that cannot be distinguished on the basis of static program structure. In this case new names that are distinct dynamic instances of the same statically uniquely qualified name are sufficient to enable the SDVS user to distinguish all instances of names for use in proofs. The separate dynamic instances of a name are indicated by appending !n to it, where n is a dynamic instance index for that name (e.g. a.x, a.x!2, a.x!3, ..., where a.x!1 is simply denoted a.x). These names are called dynamically uniquely qualified names (DUQNs).

Only statically and dynamically uniquely qualified names appear in the state deltas generated by Phase 2 translation.

8.2.2 Universe Structure for Unique Dynamic Naming

Given that there may be several dynamic instances of the same SUQN in a Stage 3 VHDL hardware description, Phase 2 translation employs a mechanism called a universe structure (together with functions that access and manipulate it) to manage the creation of new dynamic instances of each distinct SUQN, as well as to ensure that the correct dynamic instance of each SUQN is available at any given time.
A universe structure consists of four components:

**universe name:**
The name of the current universe. A universe name has the form $z\backslash u\backslash n$, where $z$ is the name of the main program and $n$ is the current universe’s ordinal number ($n = 1, 2, \ldots$).

**universe counter:**
The current universe’s ordinal number.

**universe stack:**
A stack of universe names used to save and restore prior universes in accordance with the changes of environment in a Stage 3 VHDL hardware description.

**universe variables:**
The current universe’s environment of statically and dynamically uniquely qualified names. This is a list of entries of the form (SUQN, ordinal-number, ordinal-stack), one for each distinct SUQN. The ordinal number denotes the most recently created dynamic instance of that SUQN. The ordinal stack is a stack of this SUQN’s ordinal numbers, whose top element denotes the current dynamic instance of this SUQN. This stack is used to save and restore prior dynamic instances of this SUQN in accordance with the changes of environment in a Stage 3 VHDL hardware description.

```plaintext
mk-initial-universe(z) = let uname = catenate(z, "\u", 1) in
    make-universe-data(uname, 1, (uname), ((z, 1, 1)))

make-universe-data(uname, ucounter, ustack, uvars)
= (uname, ucounter, ustack, uvars)

universe-name(v) = hd(v)

universe-counter(v) = second(v)

universe-stack(v) = third(v)

universe-vars(v) = fourth(v)

push-universe(v, z, suqn*)
= let ucounter = 1 + universe-counter(v) in
    let uname = catenate(z, "\u", ucounter) in
    let ustack = cons(uname, universe-stack(v)) in
    make-universe-data
        (uname, ucounter, ustack, push-universe-vars(suqn*, universe-vars(v)))

push-universe-vars(suqn*, vars)
= (null(suqn*) → vars,
    let suqn = hd(suqn*) in
    let v = assoc(suqn, vars) in
    (null(v) → push-universe-vars(tl(suqn*), cons(init-var(suqn), vars)),
        push-universe-vars(tl(suqn*), cons(push-var(v), vars))))
```

110
push-var(v)
= let n = next-var(second(v)) in
  (hd(v),n,cons(n,third(v)))

next-var(n)
= (numberp(n)→ n+1,
  (symbolp(n)→ mk-exp2(ADD ,n,1),
    let m = third(n) in
      (numberp(m)→ mk-exp2(ADD ,second(n),m+1),
        mk-exp2(ADD ,second(n),mk-exp2(ADD ,m,1)))))

init-var(suqn) = (suqn,1,(1))

pop-universe(v)(suqn*)
= let ustack = tl(universe-stack(v)) in
  let uname = hd(ustack) in
  make-universe-data
    (uname,universe-counter(v),ustack,
      pop-universe-vars(suqn*)(universe-vars(v)))

pop-universe-vars(suqn*,vars)
= (null(suqn*)→ vars,
  let suqn = hd(suqn*) in
  let v = assoc(suqn,vars) in
  pop-universe-vars(tl(suqn*),cons(pop-var(v),vars))

pop-var(v) = (hd(v),second(v),tl(third(v)))

get-qualified-ids(suqn*)(v)
= (null(suqn*)→ ε,
  cons(qualified-id(hd(suqn*))((v),get-qualified-ids(tl(suqn*))(v))))

qualified-id(suqn)(v)
= let vars = universe-vars(v) in
  let suqn-triple = assoc(suqn,vars) in
    (suqn-triple
      → let n = hd(third(suqn-triple)) in
        name-qualified-id(suqn)(n),
        name-qualified-id(suqn)(1))

name-qualified-id(suqn)(n)
= (new-declarations()→ (PLACELEMENT ,suqn,n),
  (n = 1 → suqn, catenate(suqn,","1",n)))

Currently, the only part of the universe structure that is actually used for dynamic name qualification is the universe variables component. Each time a program unit that may have a declarative part (packages, entities, architectures, processes, subprogram bodies) is entered, the current universe is saved and an updated universe structure is created by push-universe. The universe structure’s counter (ordinal) is incremented by one, a corresponding new universe name is created, and the old universe name is pushed onto the universe stack. In the universe variables component of the universe structure, the triple for each SUQN corresponding to each name declared in the unit’s declarative part (except types) is updated: the value of its ordinal is incremented by one and this new ordinal value is pushed onto the ordinal stack of the SUQN’s triple. Whenever any SUQN needs to be dynamically uniquely
qualified, the top element of its ordinal stack is used to find the index of the current dynamic instance of that SUQN.

When such a program unit is exited, pop-universe restores the universe name by popping it from the universe stack. The ordinal stack of the triple of the SUQN of each (non-type) name declared in this unit is popped, restoring the current dynamic qualification of that SUQN to a former value.

The functions get-qualified-ids, qualified-id, and name-qualified-id accomplish the dynamic qualification of SUQNs relative to a universe structure.

8.2.3 Execution Stack

The elements of the execution stack are descriptors that contain information to control normal returns and exits from program units, as well as the undeclaration of objects, packages, subprograms, and formal parameters.

There are several kinds of execution stack descriptors, and more detailed explanations of their roles will be provided at the points in the semantics where they are used. For now, we note that each descriptor has four components: an identifying tag; an identifier, identifier sequence, or fully qualified name that associates the descriptor with some program unit; a path that may replace the current path to effect a change of environment; and a function, which may be a continuation or continuation transformer, that will effect a change of control and environment corresponding to the descriptor's purpose.

stack bottom :

< *STKBOTTOM*, id, ε, ε >

This descriptor is the execution stack "bottom marker," used to terminate model execution and to prevent execution stack underflow. The identifier id is the name of the Stage 3 VHDL design file.

package body exit :

< *PACKAGE-BODY-EXIT*, id, p, u >

This descriptor is pushed onto the execution stack just prior to the elaboration of a package body. The identifier id is the package name, and u: Dp is a declaration continuation that will continue execution (most likely elaboration) at the package body's successor in the environment denoted by p.

subprogram return :

< *SUBPROGRAM-RETURN*, id, p, ε >

This descriptor is pushed onto the execution stack after a subprogram (procedure or function) is entered, but just before the elaboration of the subprogram's local declarations. The identifier id is the subprogram name, and ε: Sc is a continuation that will continue execution at the successor of the subprogram call in the environment denoted by p.
loop exit:

\[< \text{*LOOP-EXIT*}, \text{id}, \text{p}, \text{c}>\]

This descriptor is pushed onto the execution stack when a loop statement (LOOP, WHILE, or FOR) is entered. The identifier \text{id} is the loop label, and \text{c}: \text{Sc} is a continuation that will continue execution at the loop’s successor in the environment denoted by \text{p}.

block exit:

\[< \text{*BLOCK-EXIT*}, \text{id}, \text{p}, \text{c}>\]

This descriptor is pushed onto the execution stack just before the elaboration of a FOR loop’s iteration parameter, which implicitly establishes a block scope. The identifier \text{id} is the FOR loop label, and \text{c}: \text{Sc} is a continuation that will continue execution at the FOR loop’s successor statement in the environment denoted by \text{p}.

begin marker:

\[< \text{*BEGIN*}, \text{id}, \text{p}, \text{c}>\]

This descriptor is pushed onto the execution stack immediately after the local declarations of a subprogram, or the iteration parameter of a FOR loop, have been elaborated.

undeclaration:

\[< \text{*UNDECLARE*}, \text{id}^+, \text{p}, \text{g}>\]

This descriptor, pushed onto the execution stack when a subprogram is called, enables the eventual explicit undeclaration (upon subprogram exit) of the subprogram’s formal parameters and other locally declared objects. The identifier list \text{id}^+ names the objects to be undecclared, and \text{g}: \text{Sc} \rightarrow \text{Sc} is a continuation transformer which, after carrying out the explicit undeclaration specified in \text{g} (thereby popping this \text{*UNDECLARE*} descriptor from the execution stack), continues execution by means of its continuation argument.
8.3 Special Functions

Certain functions appearing in the semantic specification of Phase 2 translation are not defined denotationally, for either of two reasons: (1) their denotational description is too cumbersome or not well understood, or (2) they are used to construct SDVS-dependent representations of expressions or formulas.

These functions, implemented directly in Common Lisp, are described below.

8.3.1 Operational Semantic Functions

To understand Phase 2 translation, it is important to recognize that in defining the semantics of the VHDL simulation cycle, the VHDL translator involves a significant operational component. This is to be distinguished from the semantics of sequential statements within processes, which the translator defines in a primarily denotational manner.

We are referring here to our strategy, explained in Section 2, of designing aspects of a simulator kernel into the Stage 3 VHDL translator. After application of the state deltas specifying the behavior of one execution cycle for the active processes, the translator is responsible for:

- determining the next VHDL clock time at which a driver becomes active or a process resumes;
- advancing the SDVS state to this new time; and
- generating the state delta that specifies the next sequential statement in the first resuming process for the new execution cycle.

After a given resuming process suspends, its continuation is the textually next resuming process.

It is the internal translator machinery to perform these tasks that is operationally defined — much of it embodied in a portion of the translator that is directly coded in Common Lisp, rather than described by semantic equations. The names of the Common Lisp functions serving this purpose are listed below.

make-vhdl-process-elaborate
make-vhdl-begin-model-execution
make-vhdl-try-resume-next-process
make-vhdl-process-suspend
find-signal-structure
name-driver
init-scalar-signal
init-array-signal-to
init-array-signal-downto
mk-element-waves-aux
get-loop-enum-param-vals
eval-expr

8.3.2 Constructing State Deltas

The construction of state deltas is specified via functions \texttt{mk-sd}(z)(\texttt{pre}, \texttt{comod}, \texttt{mod}, \texttt{post}) and \texttt{mk-sd-decl}(z)(\texttt{pre}, \texttt{comod}, \texttt{mod}, \texttt{post}), which take five arguments: the design file name \texttt{z} (if \texttt{p} is the current path, this is always \texttt{hd(p)}) and representations of the precondition, comodification list, modification list, and postcondition of the state delta to be constructed.

These functions are used to represent the construction of state deltas without specifying their exact representation, which is SDVS-dependent and not given here. The pre- and postconditions of a state delta are \textit{lists} of formulas, each of which represents a formula that is the logical \textit{conjunction} of the formulas in this list. If the precondition and comod list arguments of \texttt{mk-sd} and \texttt{mk-sd-decl} are \texttt{e}, then the precondition and comod list of the constructed state delta are \texttt{(TRUE)} and \texttt{(ALL)}, respectively. Otherwise, the given arguments are used directly in the state delta. The postcondition may contain a state delta, which is usually represented as a statement continuation applied to an execution stack.

\texttt{mk-sd} and \texttt{mk-sd-decl} are almost the same, the only difference being that a state delta created by \texttt{mk-sd-decl} is given a special tag that identifies its association with declaration elaboration rather than statement execution.

For technical reasons, the comod list of every state delta is \texttt{(ALL)} and the mod list of every state delta must be \texttt{nonempty}. To ensure that a state delta’s mod list is never empty, \texttt{mk-sd}(z)(\ldots) will always prefix \texttt{z|pc} to its mod list argument, where \texttt{z|pc} is a unique place (represented by a system identifier) in which \texttt{z} is the name of the Stage 3 VHDL hardware description being translated. This unique place is the name of a \textit{program counter} whose value implicitly changes when \textit{any} state delta is applied. This program counter place does not make any other kind of appearance in a translated Stage 3 VHDL hardware description.

The notation of state deltas requires that certain symbols sometimes be prefixed to uniquely qualified names: the dot (\texttt{.}) and pound (\texttt{#}) symbols. The functions \texttt{dot} and \texttt{pound}, applied to uniquely qualified names, accomplish this.

\texttt{dot(placename) = (DOT ,placename)}

\texttt{pound(placename) = (POUND ,placename)}

Finally, the two functions \texttt{fixed-characterized-sds} and \texttt{subst-vars} are employed by the Phase 2 semantics of procedure calls to implement the SDVS \textit{offline characterization} mechanism [18, 19], which will be incorporated in Stage 3 VHDL.

115
8.3.3 Error Reporting

The few kinds of errors that can occur in Phase 2 are reported by the functions \texttt{impl-error} and \texttt{execution-error}.

The function \texttt{impl-error} is used, for example, to report invalid arguments passed to the low-level utility functions \texttt{mk-scalar-rel}, \texttt{mk-exp1}, and \texttt{mk-exp2}, although this should never occur.

The function \texttt{execution-error} is used to report execution errors such as an empty execution stack, although again, such errors should never occur if Phase 1 has done its job.
8.4 Phase 2 Semantic Equations

This section constitutes the heart of the present report. It documents the semantic equations and auxiliary semantic functions in terms of which Phase 2 of the Stage 3 VHDL translator — *state delta generation* — is specified denotationally.

8.4.1 Stage 3 VHDL Design Files

\[ \text{(DF1) } \mathbf{DF} \left[ \text{DESIGN-FILE} \text{id pkg-decl}^* \text{pkg-body}^* \text{use-clause}^* \text{ent-decl arch-body} \right] (t) \]

\[ \begin{align*}
&= \text{let } p_0 = \% (e)(i) \text{ in} \\
&\quad \text{let } id_1 = \text{hd} (\text{tl} (\text{ent-decl})) \text{ in} \\
&\quad \text{let } p_1 = \% (p_0)(i) \text{ in} \\
&\quad \text{let } v = \text{mk-initial-universe}(id) \\
&\quad \quad \text{and stk} = \left( < \text{STKBOTTOM}^* , \text{id}, e, e > \right) \text{ in} \\
&\quad \quad \text{(mk-disjoint}(id,(\text{dot}(id))))) \\
&\quad \quad \text{mk-cover} \\
&\quad \quad \quad \text{(dot}(id),(\text{catenate}(id,"","^\text{pc}",\text{VHDLTIME},\text{VHDLTIME-PREVIOUS})) ), \\
&\quad \quad \quad \text{mk-scalar-decl}(\text{VHDLTIME} , \text{TYPE VHDLTIME} ) , \\
&\quad \quad \quad \text{mk-scalar-decl} (\text{VHDLTIME-PREVIOUS} , \text{TYPE VHDLTIME} ) , \\
&\quad \quad \quad \text{mk-rel}(\text{vhdltime-type-desc}(t))((\text{EQ} , \text{dot} (\text{VHDLTIME}) , \text{mk-vhdltime}(0)(0)))) \\
&\quad \quad \quad \text{mk-rel} \\
&\quad \quad \quad \quad \text{(vhdltime-type-desc}(t)) \\
&\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad ((\text{EQ} , \text{dot} (\text{VHDLTIME-PREVIOUS}) , \text{mk-vhdltime}(0)(0)))) \\
&\quad \quad \quad \quad \text{mk-decl-std}(id)(e)(u_1(v)(stk)) \\
&\quad \quad \quad \quad \text{where } u_1 = \text{mk-stk} \text{D} [ \text{pkg-decl}^* ] (t)(p_0)(u_2)(v)(stk) \\
&\quad \quad \quad \quad \text{where } u_2 = \text{mk-stk} \text{D} [ \text{pkg-body}^* ] (t)(p_0)(u_3)(v)(stk) \\
&\quad \quad \quad \quad \text{where } u_3 = \text{mk-stk} \text{D} [ \text{use-clause}^* ] (t)(p_0)(u_4)(v)(stk) \\
&\quad \quad \quad \quad \text{where } u_4 = \text{mk-stk} \text{EN} [ \text{ent-decl} ] (t)(p_0)(u_5)(v)(stk) \\
&\quad \quad \quad \quad \text{where } u_5 = \text{mk-stk} \text{AR} [ \text{arch-body} ] (t)(p_1)(u_6)(v)(stk) \\
&\quad \quad \quad \quad \text{where } u_6 = \text{mk-stk} \text{block-exit}(v)(stk)
\end{align*} \]

\[ \text{mk-disjoint}(id,\text{lst}) = \text{cons}(\text{ALLDISJOINT} , \text{cons}(id,\text{lst})) \]

\[ \text{mk-cover}(id,\text{lst}) = \text{cons}(\text{COVERING} , \text{cons}(id,\text{lst})) \]

\[ \text{mk-scalar-decl}(\text{placename},\text{place-type}) = (\text{DECLARE} , \text{placename},\text{place-type}) \]

\[ \text{vhdltime-type-desc}(t) = t((\text{STANDARD})')(\text{VHDLTIME}) \]

\[ \text{mk-rel}(d)(\text{op}, e_1, e_2) \]

\[ = \text{let } tg = \text{tag}(d) \text{ in} \]

\[ \text{(case } tg \]

\[ \begin{align*}
&\text{(*BOOL*, *BIT*, *INT*, *REAL*, *TIME*, *VHDLTIME*, *ENUMTYPE*, *VOID*, *POLY*)} \\
&\quad \quad \text{mk-scalar-rel}(tg)((\text{op}, e_1, e_2)) , \\
&\quad \quad \text{SUBTYPE} \rightarrow \text{mk-scalar-rel}(\text{tag}(\text{base-type}(d)))((\text{op}, e_1, e_2)) , \\
&\quad \quad \text{INT-TYPE} \rightarrow \text{mk-scalar-rel}(\text{tag}(\text{parent-type}(d)))((\text{op}, e_1, e_2)) , \\
&\quad \quad \text{WAVE} \rightarrow (\text{EQ} , e_1, e_2) , \\
&\quad \quad \text{ARRAY-TYPE} \rightarrow (\text{is-bitvector-tdesc}?(d) \\
&\quad \quad \quad \left( \begin{cases}
\text{case op} \\
\text{EQ} \rightarrow (\text{is-constant-bitvector}?(e_1) \& \text{is-constant-bitvector}?(e_2) \\
\quad \rightarrow (\text{EQ} , \text{cons}(\text{USCONC} , e_1), \text{cons}(\text{USCONC} , e_2)) , \\
\quad \text{is-constant-bitvector}?(e_2) \rightarrow (\text{EQ} , e_1, \text{cons}(\text{USCONC} , e_2)) , \\
\quad \text{is-constant-bitvector}? (e_1) \rightarrow (\text{EQ} , \text{cons}(\text{USCONC} , e_1), e_2) .
\end{cases} \right)
\end{align*} \]

117
(EQ ,e1,e2)),

NE
→ (is-constant-bitvector?(e1) ∧ is-constant-bitvector?(e2)
→ (NEQ ,cons(USCONC ,e1),cons(USCONC ,e2)),
   is-constant-bitvector?(e2) → (NEQ ,e1,cons(USCONC ,e2)),
   is-constant-bitvector?(e1) → (NEQ ,cons(USCONC ,e1),e2),
   (NEQ ,e1,e2)),

LT
→ (EQ , (BS ,1,1),
   (is-constant-bitvector?(e1) ∧ is-constant-bitvector?(e2)
   → (USLSS ,cons(USCONC ,e1),cons(USCONC ,e2)),
   is-constant-bitvector?(e2) → (USLSS ,e1,cons(USCONC ,e2)),
   is-constant-bitvector?(e1) → (USLSS ,cons(USCONC ,e1),e2),
   (USLSS ,e1,e2))),

LE
→ (EQ , (BS ,1,1),
   (is-constant-bitvector?(e1) ∧ is-constant-bitvector?(e2)
   → (USLEQ ,cons(USCONC ,e1),cons(USCONC ,e2)),
   is-constant-bitvector?(e2) → (USLEQ ,e1,cons(USCONC ,e2)),
   is-constant-bitvector?(e1) → (USLEQ ,cons(USCONC ,e1),e2),
   (USLEQ ,e1,e2))),

GT
→ (EQ , (BS ,1,1),
   (is-constant-bitvector?(e1) ∧ is-constant-bitvector?(e2)
   → (USGTR ,cons(USCONC ,e1),cons(USCONC ,e2)),
   is-constant-bitvector?(e2) → (USGTR ,e1,cons(USCONC ,e2)),
   is-constant-bitvector?(e1) → (USGTR ,cons(USCONC ,e1),e2),
   (USGTR ,e1,e2))),

GE
→ (EQ , (BS ,1,1),
   (is-constant-bitvector?(e1) ∧ is-constant-bitvector?(e2)
   → (USGEQ ,cons(USCONC ,e1),cons(USCONC ,e2)),
   is-constant-bitvector?(e2) → (USGEQ ,e1,cons(USCONC ,e2)),
   is-constant-bitvector?(e1) → (USGEQ ,cons(USCONC ,e1),e2),
   (USGEQ ,e1,e2))),

OTHERWISE → impl-error("Shouldn’t happen!")},

is-string-tdesc?(d)
→ (case op
  EQ
  → (is-constant-string?(e1) ∧ is-constant-string?(e2)
     → (EQ ,cons(ACONC ,e1),cons(ACONC ,e2)),
     is-constant-string?(e2) → (EQ ,e1,cons(ACONC ,e2)),
     is-constant-string?(e1) → (EQ ,cons(ACONC ,e1),e2),
     (EQ ,e1,e2)),

NE
→ (is-constant-string?(e1) ∧ is-constant-string?(e2)
   → (NEQ ,cons(ACONC ,e1),cons(ACONC ,e2)),
   is-constant-string?(e2) → (NEQ ,e1,cons(ACONC ,e2)),
   is-constant-string?(e1) → (NEQ ,cons(ACONC ,e1),e2),
   (NEQ ,e1,e2)),

OTHERWISE → impl-error("Shouldn’t happen!"))},

(case op
  EQ
  → (dotted-expr-p(e2) → (EQ ,e1,e2), impl-error("Shouldn’t happen!")),

NE
→ (dotted-expr-p(e2) → (NEQ ,e1,e2),
    impl-error("Shouldn’t happen!")},

118
\[ \text{OTHERWISE} \rightarrow \text{impl-error}("Shouldn't happen!") \),
\] *
\[ \text{RECORDTYPE*} \]
\[ \rightarrow (\text{dotted-exp-r}(e_2) \rightarrow (\text{EQ},e_1,e_2),\text{impl-error}("Shouldn't happen!")\), \]
\[ \text{OTHERWISE} \rightarrow \text{impl-error}("Shouldn't happen!") \)

\[ \text{is-constant-bitvector?}(\text{expr}^*) \]
\[ = \text{null}(\text{expr}^*) \]
\[ \lor (\text{cons}(\text{expr}^*)) \]
\[ \land \text{let} \ \text{expr}_1 = \text{hd}(\text{expr}^*) \ \text{in} \]
\[ \text{cons}(\text{expr}_1) \land \text{hd}(\text{expr}_1) = \text{BS} \)

\[ \text{is-constant-string?}(\text{expr}^*) \]
\[ = \text{null}(\text{expr}^*) \]
\[ \lor (\text{cons}(\text{expr}^*)) \]
\[ \land \text{let} \ \text{expr}_1 = \text{hd}(\text{expr}^*) \ \text{in} \]
\[ \text{cons}(\text{expr}_1) \land \text{hd}(\text{expr}_1) = \text{CHAR} \)

\[ \text{dotted-exp-r}(\text{expr}) = \text{cons}(\text{expr}) \land \text{hd}(\text{expr}) = \text{DOT} \]

\[ \text{mk-scalar-rel}(\text{type-tag})(\text{relational-op},e_1,e_2) \]
\[ = (\text{case type-tag} \]
\[ \rightarrow (*\text{BOOL*} \]
\[ \rightarrow (\text{case relational-op} \]
\[ \rightarrow (\text{EQ} \rightarrow \text{mk-bool-eq}(\text{type-tag},e_1,e_2), \]
\[ \rightarrow (\text{NE} \rightarrow \text{mk-bool-neq}(\text{type-tag},e_1,e_2), \]
\[ \rightarrow (\text{LT} \rightarrow (\text{AND},(\text{EQ},e_1,\text{FALSE}),(\text{EQ},e_2,\text{TRUE})), \]
\[ \rightarrow (\text{LE} \rightarrow (\text{IMPLIES},e_1,e_2), \]
\[ \rightarrow (\text{GT} \rightarrow (\text{AND},(\text{EQ},e_1,\text{TRUE}),(\text{EQ},e_2,\text{FALSE})), \]
\[ \rightarrow (\text{GE} \rightarrow (\text{IMPLIES},e_2,e_1), \]
\[ \rightarrow \text{OTHERWISE} \]
\[ \rightarrow \text{impl-error} \]
\[ ("\text{Unrecognized Stage } 3 \text{ VHDL BOOLEAN relational operator: "a", relational-op}) \), \]
\[ (*\text{BIT*} \]
\[ \rightarrow (\text{case relational-op} \]
\[ \rightarrow (\text{EQ} \rightarrow (\text{EQ},e_1,e_2), \]
\[ \rightarrow (\text{NE} \rightarrow (\text{NEQ},e_1,e_2), \]
\[ \rightarrow (\text{LT} \rightarrow (\text{EQ},(\text{USLSS},e_1,e_2),(\text{BS},1,1)), \]
\[ \rightarrow (\text{LE} \rightarrow (\text{EQ},(\text{USLEQ},e_1,e_2),(\text{BS},1,1)), \]
\[ \rightarrow (\text{GT} \rightarrow (\text{EQ},(\text{USGTR},e_1,e_2),(\text{BS},1,1)), \]
\[ \rightarrow (\text{GE} \rightarrow (\text{EQ},(\text{USGEOQ},e_1,e_2),(\text{BS},1,1)), \]
\[ \rightarrow \text{OTHERWISE} \]
\[ \rightarrow \text{impl-error} \]
\[ ("\text{Unrecognized Stage } 3 \text{ VHDL BIT relational operator: "a", relational-op}) \), \]
\[ (*\text{INT*},*\text{TIME*} \]
\[ \rightarrow (\text{case relational-op} \]
\[ \rightarrow (\text{EQ} \rightarrow (\text{EQ},e_1,e_2), \]
\[ \rightarrow (\text{NE} \rightarrow (\text{NEQ},e_1,e_2), \]
\[ \rightarrow (\text{LT} \rightarrow (\text{LT},e_1,e_2), \]
\[ \rightarrow (\text{LE} \rightarrow (\text{LE},e_1,e_2), \]
\[ \rightarrow (\text{GT} \rightarrow (\text{GT},e_1,e_2), \]
\[ \rightarrow (\text{GE} \rightarrow (\text{GE},e_1,e_2), \]
\[ \rightarrow \text{OTHERWISE} \]
\[ \rightarrow \text{impl-error} \]
\[ ("\text{Unrecognized Stage } 3 \text{ VHDL INTEGER relational operator: "a", relational-op}) \), \]

119
**VHDLTIME**

→ (case relational-op
   EQ → (EQ ,e1,e2),
   NE → (NEQ ,e1,e2),
   LT → (TIMELT ,e1,e2),
   LE → (TIMELE ,e1,e2),
   GT → (TIMEGT ,e1,e2),
   GE → (TIMEGE ,e1,e2),
   OTHERWISE
   → impl-error
   ("Unrecognized Stage 3 VHDL VHDLTIME relational operator: "a",
    relational-op)),

**REAL**

→ (case relational-op
   EQ → (EQ ,e1,e2),
   NE → (NEQ ,e1,e2),
   (RLT ,RLE ,RGT ,RGE ) → (relational-op,e1,e2),
   OTHERWISE
   → impl-error
   ("Unrecognized Stage 3 VHDL REAL relational operator: "a",
    relational-op)),

**ENUMTYPE**

→ (case relational-op
   EQ → (EQ ,e1,e2),
   NE → (NEQ ,e1,e2),
   LT → (ELT ,e1,e2),
   LE → (ELE ,e1,e2),
   GT → (EGT ,e1,e2),
   GE → (EGE ,e1,e2),
   PRED → (EPRED ,e1,e2),
   SUCC → (ESUCC ,e1,e2),
   OTHERWISE
   → impl-error
   ("Unrecognized Stage 3 VHDL ENUMERATION relational operator: "a",
    relational-op)),

**VOID**

→ (case relational-op
   EQ → (EQ ,e1,e2),
   NE → (NEQ ,e1,e2),
   OTHERWISE
   → impl-error
   ("Unrecognized Stage 3 VHDL VOID relational operator: "a",
    relational-op)),

**POLY**

→ (case relational-op
   EQ → (EQ ,e1,e2),
   NE → (NEQ ,e1,e2),
   OTHERWISE
   → impl-error
   ("Unrecognized Stage 3 VHDL POLYMORPHIC relational operator: "a",
    relational-op)),

OTHERWISE → impl-error("Unsupported Stage 3 VHDL basic type "a.",type-tag))

mk-bool-eq(type-tag,e1,e2)
= (type-tag = *BOOL*
   → (simple-term(e1)
   → (simple-term(e2) → (EQ ,e1,e2), (EQ ,e1,(COND ,e2,TRUE ,FALSE )))),

120
simple-term(e2)→ (EQ ,e2,(COND ,e1,TRUE ,FALSE )),
               (COND ,e1,e2,(NOT ,e2)),
               (EQ ,e1,e2))

mk-bool-neq(type-tag,e1,e2)
= (type-tag = *BOOL*  
  → (simple-term(e1)  
     → (simple-term(e2)→ (NEQ ,e1,e2), (NEQ ,e1,(COND ,e2,TRUE ,FALSE ))),
        simple-term(e2)→ (NEQ ,e2,(COND ,e1,TRUE ,FALSE ))),
        (COND ,e1,e2,(NOT ,e2))),
    (NEQ ,e1,e2))

simple-term(term)
= let operators = (DOT POUND) in
  ¬consp(term)∨ hd(term)∈ operators

mk-vhdltime(global)(delta) = (VHDLTIME ,global,delta)

block-exit(v)(stk)
= let <tg,qname,p,g> = hd(stk) in
  (case tg  
   *STKBOTTOM* → model-execution-complete(qname),
   *UNDECLARE* → g(λvv,s,block-exit(vv)(s))(v)(stk),
   (*BLOCK-EXIT*,*SUBPROGRAM-RETURN*) → g(v)(stk-pop(stk)),
   (*BEGIN*,*LOOP-EXIT*,*PACKAGE-BODY-EXIT*) → block-exit(v)(stk-pop(stk)),
   OTHERWISE  
    → impl-error("Unknown execution stack descriptor with tag: "a",tg))

model-execution-complete(id)
= (mk-sd(id)(e)(e)(((VHDL_MODELEXECUTION_COMPLETE ,id)))))

A Stage 3 VHDL design file has a name, and consists of some (possibly none) package declarations, package bodies, and USE clauses, followed by an entity declaration and an architecture body.

The semantics of the design file has as its sole semantic argument the TSE t constructed by Phase 1. The design file name id denotes a special place, whose value .id is itself a place that will represent, at any given point during the translation, the current universe of visible places. This name is available to most of the Phase 2 semantic functions as the first edge label in the current path.

Translation of a design file commences by generating some top-level assertions and declarations for the SDVS Simplifier:

- A disjointness assertion, required for technical reasons. The function mk-disjoint(place-list) generates an SDVS assertion stating that the places in place-list are mutually disjoint.
- A covering assertion that the initial universe of visible places .id consists of certain predefined places: the program counter place id\pc as well as the places vhdltime and vhdltime_previous.
The function \texttt{mk-cover(place, place-list)}\footnote{The function \texttt{mk-cover} has in some instances been superseded by \texttt{mk-cover-already}; it implements an experimental new naming scheme for VHDL variables. The scheme is available only when the SDVS function \texttt{new-declarations} is defined to return non-NIL. In SDVS Version 12, this new scheme is not available, so we will not discuss the actions of this function here.} generates an SDVS covering assertion that \texttt{place} covers all the places in \texttt{place-list} and that all of the places in \texttt{place-list} are mutually disjoint.

- \textit{declarations} of the places \texttt{vhdltime} and \texttt{vhdltime.previous}. The function \texttt{mk-scalar-decl(placename,place-type)} (make scalar declaration) generates an SDVS declaration of a scalar-value place of the indicated type.

- \textit{Assertions} that the places \texttt{vhdltime} and \texttt{vhdltime.previous} have as their initial value the time object \texttt{vhdltime(0,0)} of the Simplier VHDL Time domain.

The function \texttt{mk-rel(type-desc)(relation,accessed-place,expression)} (make relation) constructs an SDVS typed relation that asserts that the value of a place at pre- or postcondition time stands in a certain relation to the value of an expression.

Then a state delta that defines the execution of the hardware description is generated. The application of this state delta leads to further usable state deltas, whose generation in the absence of errors is accomplished by continuations. With respect to the TSE \texttt{t}, an initial path consisting of the design file's name, an initial universe, and an initial execution stack containing a *STKBOTTOM* descriptor to terminate model execution (see Section 8.2), these state deltas symbolically elaborate the design file's package declarations, package bodies, USE clauses, entity declaration, and architecture body.

\section*{8.4.2 Entity Declarations}

\begin{align*}
(EN1) \texttt{ENTITY id decl1, decl2 opt-id phase-hook (t)(p)(u)(v)(stk)} \quad = \texttt{let p1 = \%p(id) in} \\
\quad \texttt{D [ decl1 (t)(p1)(u1)(v)(stk)} \\
\quad \texttt{where u1 = \lambda v1,stk1, D [ decl2 (t)(p1)(u)(v)(stk)}
\end{align*}

Phase 2 translation of an entity declaration effects the elaboration, via semantic function \texttt{D}, first of its port declarations, and then of any other declarations local to the entity. The interphase abstract syntax tree transformation has arranged for the Phase 2 abstract syntax of port declarations to be identical to that for other objects of class \texttt{SIGNAL}.

\section*{8.4.3 Architecture Bodies}

\begin{align*}
(AR1) \texttt{ARCHITECTURE id1 id2 decl* con-stat* opt-id (t)(p)(u)(v)(stk)} \quad = \texttt{let p1 = \%p(id1) in} \\
\quad \texttt{D [ decl* (t)(p1)(u1)(v)(stk)} \\
\quad \texttt{where} \\
\quad \texttt{u1 = \lambda v1,stk1, CS [ con-stat* (t)(p1)(u2)(v1)(stk1)} \\
\quad \texttt{where} \\
\quad \texttt{u2 = \lambda v2,stk2}. \texttt{}}\end{align*}
Phase 2 translation of an architecture body first effects the elaboration, via semantic function D, of the architecture’s local declarations, and then initiates the translation, via semantic function CS, of its concurrent statements (which have been uniformly converted to PROCESS statements by the interphase abstract syntax tree transformation at the end of Phase 1; see Section 7). The continuation of concurrent statement elaboration returns a Simplicer assert to the effect that the VHDL model’s elaboration is complete, as well as a state delta, constructed by special function make-vhdl-begin-model-execution, that initiates symbolic execution of the model.

8.4.4 Declarations

(D0) D [] ε [] (t)(p)(u)(v)(stk) = u(v)(stk)

(D1) D [] decl decl* [] (t)(p)(u)(v)(stk)
   = D [] decl [] (t)(p)(u1)(v)(stk)
     where u1 = λv1,stk1.D [] decl* [] (t)(p)(u)(v)(stk)

(D2) D [] pkg-decl pkg-decl* [] (t)(p)(u)(v)(stk)
   = D [] pkg-decl [] (t)(p)(u1)(v)(stk)
     where u1 = λv1,stk1.D [] pkg-decl* [] (t)(p)(u)(v)(stk)

(D3) D [] pkg-body pkg-body* [] (t)(p)(u)(v)(stk)
   = D [] pkg-body [] (t)(p)(u1)(v)(stk)
     where u1 = λv1,stk1.D [] pkg-body* [] (t)(p)(u)(v)(stk)

(D4) D [] use-clause use-clause* [] (t)(p)(u)(v)(stk)
   = D [] use-clause [] (t)(p)(u1)(v)(stk)
     where u1 = λv1,stk1.D [] use-clause* [] (t)(p)(u)(v)(stk)

The Phase 2 processing of declarations proceeds sequentially, from first to last.

(D5) D [] DEC object-class id* type-mark opt-expr [] (t)(p)(u)(v)(stk)
   = let d = lookup-desc(type-mark)(t)(p) in
     (case tag(d)
       (*BOOL*, *BIT*, *INT*, *REAL*, *TIME*, *ENUMTYPE*, *SUBTYPE*, *INT.TYPE*)
       → gen-scalar-decl
       decl(object-class)(id*)(d)(opt-expr)(t)(p)(u)(v)(stk),
     *ARRAYTYPE*
       → gen-array-decl
       decl(object-class)(id*)(direction(d))(real-lb(d))
       (real-ub(d))(eltv(d))(opt-expr)(t)(p)(u)(v)(stk),
     *RECORDTYPE*
       → gen-record-decl
       decl(object-class)(id*)(d)(opt-expr)(t)(p)(u)(v)(stk),
     OTHERWISE → u(v)(stk))

123
(D6) D [ SLDEC object-class id+ slice-name opt-expr ] (t)(p)(u)(v)(stk)
= let d = lookup(t)(p)(hd(id+)) in
    let anon-array-type-desc = second(type(d)) in
    gen-array-DECL
    (decl)(object-class)(id+)(anon-array-type-desc)
    (direction(anon-array-type-desc))(lb(anon-array-type-desc))
    (ub(anon-array-type-desc))(elty(anon-array-type-desc))(opt-expr(t)(p)
    (u)(v)(stk)

lookup-desc(id+)(t)(p)
= (null(id+)) → void-type-desc(t),
    let q = access(rest(id+))(t)(p) in
    lookup-desc-on-path(t)(q)(last(id+))

lookup-desc-on-path(t)(p)(id)
= let d = t(p)(id) in
    (d = *UNBOUND* → lookup-desc-on-path(t)(rest(p))(id), d)

access(id+)(t)(p)
= (null(id+)) → p,
    let d = lookup(t)(p)(hd(id+)) in
    access(t(id+))(t)(%path(d))(idf(d)))

= (null(expr))

= (object-class = SIG

= (null(id+)) → u(v,stk),
    let id+ = (hd(id+)) in
    where
    u1 = λv1.stk1,
    gen-scalar-DECL-id*

= R [ expr ] (t)(p)(k)(v)(stk)
    where
    k = λ(e,f),v1,stk1,
    let z = hd(p)
    and suqn+ = get-qids(id+)(t)(p) in
    let v2 = push-universe(v1)(z)(suqn+), v1, stk1
    let duqn+ = get-qualified-ids(suqn+)(v2) in
    (mk-DECL-sd
    (z)(f)(z)(z))
    (nconc
    (mk-qual-id-coverings(suqn+)(duqn+)(z)(v)(t),
    mk-scalar-nonsignal-DECL-post
    (decl)((duqn+,e,d))(t)(p)(u)(v2)(stk)))

124
get-qids(id^)(t)(p)
= (null(id^) → ε, cons(qid(t)(hd(id^)), get-qids(tl(id^))(t)(p)))

get-qualified-ids(suqn^)(v)
= (null(suqn^) → ε, cons(qualified-id(hd(suqn^))(v), get-qualified-ids(tl(suqn^))(v)))

qualified-id(suqn)(v)
= let vars = universe-vars(v) in
  let suqn-triple = assoc(suqn, vars) in
  (suqn-triple → let n = hd(third(suqn-triple)) in
   name-qualified-id(suqn)(n),
   name-qualified-id(suqn)(1))

name-qualified-id(suqn)(n)
= (new-declarations() → (PLACELEMENT ,suqn,n),
  (n = 1 → suqn, catenate(suqn,"!",n)))

already-qualified-id(suqn)(v) = ¬null(assoc(suqn, universe-vars(v)))

qualified-id-decls(suqn^)
= (null(suqn^) → ε,
  let suqn = hd(suqn^) in
  cons((DECLARE ,suqn,(TYPE ,PLACEARRAY )), qualified-id-decls(tl(suqn^))))

mk-qual-id-coverings(suqn^)(duqn^)(z)(v)(t)
= (new-declarations()
  → (already-qualified-id(hd(suqn^))(v))
  → (mk-rel(univint-type-desc(t))(EQ ,pound(z), dot(z))),
  nconc
    ((mk-disjoint(z, cons(dot(z), suqn^)),
      mk-cover(pound(z), cons(dot(z), suqn^)), qualified-id-decls(suqn^))),
    (mk-disjoint(z, cons(dot(z), duqn^)), mk-cover(pound(z), cons(dot(z), duqn^))))

= let type-spec = mk-type-spec(d)(t)(p) in
  (null(e)
   → nconc
     (mk-scalar-nonsignal-dec-post-declare(duqn^)(type-spec),
      u(v)(stk)),
     nconc
     (mk-scalar-nonsignal-dec-post-declare(duqn^)(type-spec),
      u1(v)(stk))
    where
    u1 = λv1,stk1.
    (mk-decl-sd
     (hd(p))(e)(e)(duqn^)
     (nconc
      (mk-scalar-nonsignal-dec-post-init(duqn^)(e)(d),
       u(v1)(stk1))))))

mk-type-spec(d)(t)(p)
= (case tag(d)
  *BOOL* → (TYPE BOOLEAN),
  *BIT* → (TYPE BIT),
  (*INT*, *INT_TYPE*, *TIME*) → (TYPE INTEGER).
*REAL* → (TYPE FLOAT),
*VHDLTIME* → (TYPE VHDLTIME),
*ENUMTYPE* → (TYPE CHARACTER),
*SUBTYPE* → mk-type-spec(base-type(d))(t)(p),
*VOID* → (TYPE VOID),
*POLY* → (TYPE POLYMORPHIC),
*RECORDTYPE* → cons(TYPE ,cons(RECORD ,record-to-type(components(d)))(t)(p))),
*ARRAYTYPE* → let expr1 = lb(d) in
let expr2 = ub(d) in
where
k1 = λ(e1, f1).v1, stk1,
let expr3 = record-components in
where
k2 = λ(e2, f2).v2, stk2.
cons(TYPE ,
ARRAY ,r1, r2, mk-type-spec(elty(d))(t)(p))),
*WAVE* → (TYPE ,WAVEFORM ,mk-type-spec(hd(type(d)))(t)(p)),
OTHERWISE → impl-error("Unrecognized Stage 3 VHDL type: "#a",tag(d))

record-to-type(record-components(t)(p))
= (null(record-components) → e,
    let (id, d) = hd(record-components) in
    cons((id, mk-type-spec(d))(t)(p)),
    record-to-type(tl(record-components))(t)(p)))

mk-scalar-nonsignal-dec-post-declare(duqn*) (type-spec)
= (null(duqn*) → e,
    let duqn = hd(duqn*) in
    cons(mk-scalar-decl(duqn, type-spec),
    mk-scalar-nonsignal-dec-post-declare(tl(duqn*) (type-spec)))

mk-scalar-decl(placename, place-type) = (DECLARE ,placename, place-type)

mk-scalar-nonsignal-dec-post-init(duqn*) (e)(d)
= (null(duqn*) → e,
    let duqn = hd(duqn*) in
    nconc
    (assign(d)((duqn, e)), mk-scalar-nonsignal-dec-post-init(tl(duqn*) (e)(d)))

assign(d)(target, value)
= (case tag(d)
    (*BOOL*, *BIT*, *INT*, *REAL*, *TIME*, *VHDLTIME*, *ENUMTYPE*, *WAVE*,
    *VOID*, *POLY*)
    → (mk-rel(d)((EQ ,pound((target), value)))),
    *SUBTYPE* → assign(base-type(d))((target, value)),
    *INT.TYPE* → assign(parent-type(d))((target, value)),
    *ARRAYTYPE*
    → (is-bitvector-tdesc?(d)
        → (is-constant-bitvector?(value)
            → (case direction(d)
                TO
                → assign-array-to
                    (target)(value)(elty(d))((ORIGIN ,target))(0),

126
DOWNTO
  → assign-array-downto
      (target)(value)(eltY(d))
      (mk-exp2
        (SUB
         mk-exp2(ADD ,(ORIGIN ,target),(RANGE ,target)),1))(0),
    OTHERWISE → impl-error("Illegal direction: "a",direction
      (d))),
      (mk-rel(d)((((EQ ,pound(target),value)))),
    is-string-tdesc?(d)
  → (is-constant-string?(value)
    → (case direction(d)
        ➔ assign-array-to
          (target)(value)(eltY(d))(ORIGIN ,target))(0),
    DOWNTO
    → assign-array-downto
      (target)(value)(eltY(d))
      (mk-exp2
        (SUB
         mk-exp2(ADD ,(ORIGIN ,target),(RANGE ,target)),1))(0),
    OTHERWISE → impl-error("Illegal direction: "a",direction
      (d))),
      (mk-rel(d)((((EQ ,pound(target),value)))),
    (dotted-expr-p(value) → (mk-rel(d)((((EQ ,pound(target),value)))),
      (case direction(d)
    TO → assign-array-to(target)(value)(eltY(d))(ORIGIN ,target))(0),
    DOWNTO
    → assign-array-downto
      (target)(value)(eltY(d))
      (mk-exp2
        (SUB
         mk-exp2(ADD ,(ORIGIN ,target),(RANGE ,target)),1))(0),
    OTHERWISE → impl-error("Illegal direction: "a",direction(d))),
    *RECORDTYPE*
    → (dotted-expr-p(value) → assign-record(d)((target,value)),
      assign-record-fields(components(d))((target,value)),
    OTHERWISE → impl-error("Unrecognized Stage 3 VHDL type tag: "a",tag(d))

is-constant-bitvector?(expr*)
= null(expr*)
  ∨ (consp(expr*)
    ∧ let expr₁ = hd(expr*) in
      consp(expr₁) ∧ hd(expr₁) = BS )

is-constant-string?(expr*)
= null(expr*)
  ∨ (consp(expr*)
    ∧ let expr₁ = hd(expr*) in
      consp(expr₁) ∧ hd(expr₁) = CHAR )

dotted-expr-p(expr) = consp(expr) ∧ hd(expr) = DOT

assign-array-to(target)(aggregate)(element-type-desc)(start-index)(m)
= (null(aggregate) → ε,
  nconc
    (assign

(element-type-desc)
((ELEMENT ,target,mk-exp2(ADD ,start-index,m)),hd(aggregate))),
assign-array-to
(target)(tl(aggregate))(element-type-desc)(start-index)(m+1))

assign-array-down-to(target)(aggregate)(element-type-desc)(start-index)(m) = (null(aggregate) → ε,
ncconc
(assign
(element-type-desc)
(((ELEMENT ,target,mk-exp2(SUB ,start-index,m)),hd(aggregate))),
assign-array-down-to
(target)(tl(aggregate))(element-type-desc)(start-index)(m+1))

mk-exp2(binary-op,e1,e2) = (case binary-op
  AND → (AND ,e1,e2),
  NAND → (NAND ,e1,e2),
  OR → (OR ,e1,e2),
  NOR → (NOR ,e1,e2),
  XOR → (XOR ,e1,e2),
  BAND → (USAND ,e1,e2),
  BNAND → (USNAND ,e1,e2),
  BOR → (USOR ,e1,e2),
  BNXOR → (USXOR ,e1,e2),
  ADD → (PLUS ,e1,e2),
  SUB → (MINUS ,e1,e2),
  MUL → (MULT ,e1,e2),
  DIV → (DIV ,e1,e2),
  MOD → (MOD ,e1,e2),
  REM → (REM ,e1,e2),
  EXP → (EXPT ,e1,e2),
  (RPLUS ,RMINUS ,RTIMES ,RDIV ,REXPT ) → (binary-op,e1,e2),
  CONCAT → (ACONC ,e1,e2),
  OTHERWISE → impl-error("Unrecognized Stage 3 VHDL binary operator: "a",binary-op))

assign-record(d)(target-record,dotted-source-record)
= cons(mk-rel(d)((EQ ,pound(target-record),dotted-source-record)),
assign-record-aux
(components(d))((target-record,second(dotted-source-record))))

assign-record-aux(comp*)target-record,source-record-name)
= (null(comp*) → ε,
  let (id,d) = hd(comp*) in
  ncconc
  (assign
    (d)
    ((mk-recelt(target-record,id),dot(mk-recelt(source-record-name,id)))))
  assign-record-aux(tl(comp*))((target-record,second(source-record-name))))

assign-record-fields(comp*)target-record,source-fields)
= (null(comp*) → ε,
  let (id,d) = hd(comp*) in
  ncconc
  (assign(d)((mk-recelt(target-record,id),second(assoc(id,source-fields)))))
  assign-record-fields(tl(comp*))((target-record,second(source-fields))))

128
mk-receiv(e)(id) = (RECORD . e, id)

\begin{align*}
\text{gen-scalar-signal-decl-id+:}(\text{decl})(\text{id}^+)(\text{d})(\text{expr})(\text{t})(\text{p})(\text{u})(\text{v})(\text{stk}) \\
= \text{R} \left[ \begin{array}{c}
\text{expr} \\
(\text{t})(\text{p})(\text{k})(\text{v})(\text{stk})
\end{array} \right] \\
\text{where}
\begin{array}{l}
k = \lambda(e,f,v_1,\text{stk}_1).
\end{array}
\begin{array}{l}
\text{let } z = \text{hd}(p)
\end{array}
\begin{array}{l}
\text{and } \text{signal-suqn}^+ = \text{get-qids}(\text{id}^+)(\text{t})(\text{p}) \text{ in}
\end{array}
\begin{array}{l}
\text{let } \text{driver-suqn}^+ = \text{name-drivers}(\text{signal-suqn}^+) \text{ in}
\end{array}
\begin{array}{l}
\text{let } v_2 = \text{push-universe}(v_1)(z)(\text{signal-suqn}^+) \text{ in}
\end{array}
\begin{array}{l}
\text{let } v = \text{get-qualified-ids}(\text{signal-suqn}^+)(v_2)
\end{array}
\begin{array}{l}
\text{and } \text{driver-duqn}^+ = \text{get-qualified-ids}(\text{driver-suqn}^+)(v_2) \text{ in}
\end{array}
\begin{array}{l}
\text{let } duqn^+ = \text{append}(\text{signal-duqn}^+, \text{driver-duqn}^+) \text{ in}
\end{array}
\begin{array}{l}
(mk-decl-sd)
\end{array}
\begin{array}{l}
(z)(f)(e)(z)
\end{array}
\begin{array}{l}
(nconc)
\end{array}
\begin{array}{l}
(mk-qual-id-coverings(\text{suqn}^+))(\text{duqn}^+)(z)(\text{v})(\text{t}),
\end{array}
\begin{array}{l}
\text{mk-scalar-signal-dec-post}
\end{array}
\begin{array}{l}
(\text{decl})(\text{duqn}^+, \text{signal-duqn}^+, \text{driver-duqn}^+, e, d)(\text{t})(\text{p})(\text{u})
\end{array}
\begin{array}{l}
(v_2)(\text{stk}))
\end{array}
\end{align*}

name-drivers(\text{signal-names})
= \langle \text{null}(\text{signal-names}) \rightarrow \varepsilon, \\
\text{cons(name-driver(\text{hd}(\text{signal-names})),name-drivers(\text{tl}(\text{signal-names})))} \rangle

\begin{align*}
\text{mk-scalar-signal-dec-post}(\text{decl})(\text{duqn}^+, \text{signal-duqn}^+, \text{driver-duqn}^+, e, d)(\text{t})(\text{p})(\text{u})(\text{v})(\text{stk}) \\
= \text{let } \text{sigtype-spec} = \text{mk-sigtype-spec}(\text{d})(\text{t})(\text{p})
\end{align*}
\begin{align*}
\text{and } \text{waveform-type-spec} = \langle \text{TYPE, WAVEFORM, mk-type-spec}(\text{d})(\text{t})(\text{p}) \rangle \text{ in}
\end{align*}
\begin{align*}
nconc
\end{align*}
\begin{align*}
(mk-scalar-signal-dec-post-declare)
\end{align*}
\begin{align*}
(\text{signal-duqn}^+)(\text{driver-duqn}^+)(\text{sigtype-spec})(\text{waveform-type-spec}),
\end{align*}
\begin{align*}
u_1(v)(\text{stk})
\end{align*}
\begin{align*}
\text{where}
\begin{array}{l}
u_1 = \lambda v_1, \text{stk}_1.
\end{array}
\begin{array}{l}
(mk-decl-sd)
\end{array}
\begin{array}{l}
(\text{hd}(\text{p}))(\varepsilon)(\varepsilon)(\text{duqn}^+)
\end{array}
\begin{array}{l}
(nconc)
\end{array}
\begin{array}{l}
(mk-scalar-signal-dec-post-init)
\end{array}
\begin{array}{l}
(\text{signal-duqn}^+)(\text{driver-duqn}^+)(\varepsilon)(d)(\text{waveform-type-desc}(d)),
\end{array}
\begin{array}{l}
u_1(v_1)(\text{stk}_1))
\end{array}
\end{align*}

\begin{align*}
\text{mk-scalar-signal-dec-post-declare(\text{signal-duqn}^+)}(\text{driver-duqn}^+)(\text{sigtype-spec})(\text{waveform-type-spec}) \\
= \langle \text{null}(\text{signal-duqn}^+) \rightarrow \varepsilon, \\
\text{let } \text{signal-duqn} = \text{hd}(\text{signal-duqn}^+) \\
\text{and } \text{driver-duqn} = \text{hd}(\text{driver-duqn}^+) \text{ in}
\end{align*}
\begin{align*}
nconc
\end{align*}
\begin{align*}
(mk-scalar-signal-decl)
\end{align*}
\begin{align*}
(\langle \text{signal-duqn}, \text{driver-duqn} \rangle)(\langle \text{sigtype-spec, waveform-type-spec} \rangle),
\end{align*}
\begin{align*}
\text{mk-scalar-signal-dec-post-declare}
\end{align*}
\begin{align*}
(\text{tl}(\text{signal-duqn}^+))(\text{tl}(\text{driver-duqn}^+))(\text{sigtype-spec})(\text{waveform-type-spec}))
\end{align*}

\begin{align*}
\text{mk-scalar-signal-decl(\text{signal-name}, \text{driver-name})(\text{sigtype-spec, waveform-type-spec})}
\end{align*}
\begin{align*}
= \langle \text{mk-scalar-decl(\text{signal-name, sigtype-spec}),} \\
\text{mk-scalar-decl(\text{driver-name, waveform-type-spec})} \rangle
\end{align*}
mk-scalar-signal-fn-decl(signal-name,driver-name)  
= (DECLARE ,signal-name,(TYPE ,FN ,(VAL ,root(driver-name),dot(VHDLTIME )))))

waveform-type-desc(type-desc) = <WAVEFORM ,ε,*WAVE*,(STANDARD) ,tt,type-desc>

mk-scalar-signal-dec-post-init(signal-duqn*)(driver-duqn*)(c)(type-desc)(waveform-type-desc)  
= (null(signal-duqn*))→ ε,  
let signal-duqn = hd(signal-duqn*)  
and driver-duqn = hd(driver-duqn*) in  
let initial-signal-val = (null(ε)→ eval-expr(dot(signal-duqn)), ε) in  
let initial-waveform = init-scalar-signal  
(signal-duqn)(driver-duqn)(type-desc)  
(initial-signal-val) in  
ncconc  
(assign(waveform-type-desc)((driver-duqn,initial-waveform)),  
mk-scalar-signal-dec-post-init  
(tl(signal-duqn*)(tl((driver-duqn*)))(c)(type-desc)(waveform-type-desc)))

gen-array-decl(decl)  
(t)(p)(u)(v)(stk)  
= (null(expr))  
→ gen-array-decl-id+  
(decl)object-class)(id+)(type-desc)(direction)(lower-bound)(upper-bound)  
(element-type-desc)(expr)(t)(p)(u)(v)(stk),  
gen-array-decl-id*  
(decl)object-class)(id+)(type-desc)(direction)(lower-bound)(upper-bound)  

real-lb(d)  
= let bound = lb(d) in  
(is-num-lit?(bound)→ bound,  
(REF ,((SREF .path(d),mk-tick-low(idf(d))))))

real-ub(d)  
= (path(d)= (STANDARD) ∧ idf(d)∈ (STRING BIT VECTOR) → ε,  
let bound = ub(d) in  
(is-num-lit?(bound)→ bound,  
(REF ,((SREF .path(d),mk-tick-high(idf(d)))))))

mk-tick-low(id) = concatenate(id,"'LOW")

mk-tick-high(id) = concatenate(id,"'HIGH")

gen-array-decl-id+(decl)  
(t)(p)(u)(v)(stk)  
= (object-class = SIG  
→ gen-array-signal-dec-id+  
(decl)(id+)(type-desc)(direction)(lower-bound)(upper-bound)  
(element-type-desc)(expr)(t)(p)(u)(v)(stk),  
gen-array-nonsignal-dec-id+  
(t)(p)(u)(v)(stk))
\[
\text{gen-array-decl-id}^*(\text{decl}) \\
\quad (\text{object-class})(\text{id}^*)(\text{type-desc})(\text{direction})(\text{lower-bound})(\text{upper-bound})(\text{element-type-desc})(\text{expr}) \\
\quad (t)(p)(u)(v)(\text{stk}) \\
= (\text{null}(\text{id}^*)) \rightarrow u(v, \text{stk}) , \\
\text{let } \text{id}^* = (\text{hd}(\text{id}^*)) \text{ in} \\
\quad \text{gen-array-decl-id}^* \\
\quad (\text{decl})(\text{object-class})(\text{id}^*)(\text{type-desc})(\text{direction})(\text{lower-bound})(\text{upper-bound}) \\
\quad (\text{element-type-desc})(\text{expr})(t)(p)(u_1)(v_1)(\text{stk}) \\
\quad \text{where} \\
\quad u_1 = \lambda v_1, \text{stk}_1. \\
\quad \text{gen-array-decl-id}^* \\
\quad (\text{decl})(\text{object-class})(\text{tl}(\text{id}^*))(\text{type-desc})(\text{direction})(\text{lower-bound}) \\
\quad (\text{upper-bound})(\text{element-type-desc})(\text{expr})(t)(p)(u)(v)(\text{stk}_1)) \\
\]

\[
\text{gen-array-nonsignal-decl}^*(\text{decl}) \\
\quad (\text{id}^*)(\text{direction})(\text{expr}_1)(\text{expr}_2)(\text{element-type-desc})(\text{expr}) \\
\quad (t)(p)(u)(v)(\text{stk}) \\
= \mathbb{R}[\text{expr}][t](p)(k)(v begging with st)k, \\
\text{where} \\
\quad k = \lambda (c_1, f_1, v_1, \text{stk}_1, k_1 = \lambda (c_1, f_1, v_2, \text{stk}_2, k_2 = \lambda (c_2, f_2, v_3, \text{stk}_3, \\
\text{let } z = \text{hd}(p) \\
\text{and } \text{len} = \text{length-exp}(\text{expr}) \\
\text{and } \text{suqn}^+ = \text{get-qids}(\text{id}^*)(t)(p) \text{ in} \\
\text{let } v_4 = \text{push-universe}(v_3)(z)(\text{suqn}^+) \text{ in} \\
\text{let } \text{duqn}^+ = \text{get-qualified-ids}(\text{suqn}^+)(v_4) \text{ in} \\
\text{let } g_1 = (c_1 \land c_2) \\
\quad \rightarrow \text{mk-rel} \\
\quad (\text{univint-type-desc}(t)) \\
\quad ((\text{LE}, c_1, c_2)), \\
\quad \text{TRUE} ) \text{ in} \\
\quad \text{and } g_2 = (c_1 \land c_2) \\
\quad \rightarrow \text{mk-rel} \\
\quad (\text{univint-type-desc}(t)) \\
\quad ((\text{GE}, \\
\quad \text{mk-exp}2 \\
\quad (\text{ADD}, \text{mk-exp}2(\text{SUB}, c_2, c_1), \\
\quad 1, \text{len})), \\
\quad \text{TRUE} ) \text{ in} \\
\text{(mk-decl-sd} \\
\quad (z) \\
\quad \text{(nconc} \\
\quad (f_1, f_2, (g_1), \\
\quad (\text{len} = 0 \rightarrow f, \text{nconc}((g_2, f))))(z)((z)) \\
\quad \text{(nconc} \\
\quad (\text{mk-qual-id-coverings} \\
\quad (\text{suqn}^+)(\text{duqn}^+)(z)(v)(t), \\
\text{mk-array-nonsignal-dec-post} \\
\quad (\text{decl}) \\
\quad ((\text{duqn}^+, c, \text{direction}, c_1, c_2, \text{element-type-desc})) \\
\quad (t)(p)(u)(v_4)(\text{stk}_3)))) \\
\]
length-expr(expr) = (null(expr)→ 0, hd(expr)∈ (BITSTR STR PAGGR) → length(second(expr)), 1)


mk-array-dec(id)(lower-bound)(upper-bound)(element-type-spec) = (DECLARE ,id,(TYPE ,ARRAY ,lower-bound,upper-bound,element-type-spec))
\begin{verbatim}

mk-bitvec-fn-decl(bitvec-name)(direction)(lower-bound)(upper-bound)
= let bitvec-elt-names = (direction = TO
  → mk-slice-elt-names-to
    (bitvec-name)(lower-bound)(upper-bound),
    mk-slice-elt-names-downto
    (bitvec-name)(lower-bound)(upper-bound))

(DECLARE ,bitvec-name,(TYPE ,FN ,concatenate-bits(bitvec-elt-names)))

mk-string-fn-decl(string-name)(direction)(lower-bound)(upper-bound)
= let string-elt-names = (direction = TO
  → mk-slice-elt-names-to
    (string-name)(lower-bound)(upper-bound),
    mk-slice-elt-names-downto
    (string-name)(lower-bound)(upper-bound))

(DECLARE ,string-name,(TYPE ,FN ,concatenate-characters(string-elt-names)))

mk-slice-elt-names-to(slice-name)(lower-bound)(upper-bound)
= (lower-bound > upper-bound → ε,
  cons(mk-array-elt(slice-name)(lower-bound),
    mk-slice-elt-names-to(slice-name)(lower-bound+1)(upper-bound)))

mk-slice-elt-names-downto(slice-name)(lower-bound)(upper-bound)
= (upper-bound < lower-bound → ε,
  cons(mk-array-elt(slice-name)(upper-bound),
    mk-slice-elt-names-downto(slice-name)(lower-bound)(upper-bound−1)))

mk-array-elt(id)(e) = (ELEMENT ,id,e)

concatenate-bits(bit-names) = cons(USCONC ,mk-dotted-names(bit-names))

concatenate-characters(char-names) = cons(ACONC ,mk-dotted-names(char-names))

mk-dotted-names(names)
= (null(names) → ε, cons(dot(hd(names)),mk-dotted-names(tl(names))))

mk-array-nonsignal-dec-post-init-to(duqn*)(e)(element-type-desc)(lower-bound)
= (null(duqn*) → ε,
  nconc
    (assign-array-to(kd(duqn*))(e)(element-type-desc)(lower-bound)(0),
    mk-array-nonsignal-dec-post-init-to
      (tl(duqn*))(e)(element-type-desc)(lower-bound)))

mk-array-nonsignal-dec-post-init-downto(duqn*)(e)(element-type-desc)(upper-bound)
= (null(duqn*) → ε,
  nconc
    (assign-array-downto(kd(duqn*))(e)(element-type-desc)(upper-bound)(0),
    mk-array-nonsignal-dec-post-init-downto
      (tl(duqn*))(e)(element-type-desc)(upper-bound)))

gen-array-signal-decl-id+(decl)
  (id*),(type-desc)(direction)(expr1)(expr2)(element-type-desc)(expr)
  (t)(p)(u)(v)(stk)
= R [ expr ] (t)(p)(k)(v)(stk)

where
  k = \lambda (e,f),v,stk.1.
  R [ expr1 ] (t)(p)(k1)(v1)(stk1)
\end{verbatim}
\[ k_1 = \lambda(e_1,f_1),v_2,\text{stk}_2. \]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{let } & z = \text{hd}(p) \\
\text{and } & \text{len} = \text{length-expr}(\text{expr}) \\
\text{and } & \text{signal-suqn}^+ = \text{get-qids}(\text{id}^+)(t)(p) \text{ in} \\
\text{let } & \text{driver-suqn}^+ = \text{name-drivers}(\text{signal-suqn}^+) \text{ in} \\
\text{let } & \text{suqn}^+ = \text{append}(\text{signal-suqn}^+,\text{driver-suqn}^+) \text{ in} \\
\text{let } & v_4 = \text{push-universe}(v_3)(z)(\text{suqn}^+) \text{ in} \\
\text{let } & \text{signal-duqn}^+ = \text{get-qualified-ids} \\
\text{and } & \text{driver-duqn}^+ = \text{get-qualified-ids} \\
\text{let } & \text{duqn}^+ = \text{append} \\
\text{let } & g_1 = (e_1 \land e_2) \\
\text{let } & g_2 = (e_1 \land e_2) \\
\text{(mk-decl-sd)} \\
\text{(nconc)} \\
\text{(mk-qual-id-coverings)} \\
\text{mk-array-signal-dec-post} \\
\text{(decl)} \\
\text{(nconc)} \\
\text{mk-array-signal-dec-post-declare} \\
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{let } & \text{element-sigtype-spec = mk-sigtype-spec(element-type-desc)(t)(p)} \\
\text{and } & \text{element-waveform-type-spec = mk-waveform-type-spec} \\
\text{where}
\end{align*}
\]

134
\[ u_i = \lambda v_1, s_{tk_1},
  (mk-decl-sd
   (hd(p))(\epsilon)(duqn^*)
   (nconc
      (mk-array-signal-dec-post-init
       (signal-duqn^*)(driver-duqn^*)(\epsilon)(type-desc)(direction)
       (lower-bound)(upper-bound)(element-type-desc)
       (waveform-type-desc)(element-type-desc))(t)(p)(v)(stk),
    u(v_1)(stk_1))))
\]

\[ \text{mk-waveform-type-spec}(\text{type-spec})
  = \begin{cases} 
    \text{ARRAY} \rightarrow \text{append}(\text{rest}(\text{type-spec}), (\text{mk-waveform-type-spec}(\text{last}(\text{type-spec}))))), \\
    \text{OTHERWISE} \rightarrow (\text{TYPE,WAVEFORM}, \text{type-spec}) 
  \end{cases} \]

\[ \text{mk-array-signal-dec-post-declare}(\text{signal-duqn}^*)(\text{driver-duqn}^*)(\text{direction})(\text{lower-bound})(\text{upper-bound})
  (\text{element-sigtype-spec})(\text{element-waveform-type-spec})(\text{fn-decls})?
   (t)(p)(v)(stk) \]

\[ = (\text{null}(\text{signal-duqn}^*) \rightarrow \epsilon, \]
\[ \text{let} \ \text{signal-duqn} = \text{hd}(\text{signal-duqn}^*)
  \text{and} \ \text{driver-duqn} = \text{hd}(\text{driver-duqn}^*) \text{ in} \]
\[ \text{nconc}
  (\text{mk-array-signal-dec}
   (\text{signal-duqn})(\text{driver-duqn})(\text{direction})(\text{lower-bound})(\text{upper-bound})
   (\text{element-sigtype-spec})(\text{element-waveform-type-spec})(\text{fn-decls})?(t)(p)(v)
   (stk),
  \text{mk-array-signal-dec-post-declare}
   (\text{tl}(\text{signal-duqn}^*))(\text{tl}(\text{driver-duqn}^*))(\text{direction})(\text{lower-bound})
   (\text{upper-bound})(\text{element-sigtype-spec})(\text{element-waveform-type-spec})
   (\text{fn-decls})?(t)(p)(v)(stk))) \]

\[ \text{mk-array-signal-dec}(\text{signal-name})(\text{driver-name})(\text{direction})(\text{lower-bound})(\text{upper-bound})
  (\text{element-sigtype-spec})(\text{element-waveform-type-spec})(\text{fn-decls})?
   (t)(p)(v)(stk) \]

\[ = \text{nconc}
  (\text{mk-vhdl-sigarray-decl}
   (\text{signal-name})(\text{direction})(\text{lower-bound})
   (\text{null})(\text{upper-bound})
   \rightarrow (\text{lower-bound} = 1 \rightarrow (\text{RANGE, signal-name}),
    \text{mk-exp2}(\text{SUB, mk-exp2}(\text{ADD,(RANGE, signal-name)}, \text{lower-bound}), 1)),
    \text{upper-bound})(\text{element-sigtype-spec})(\text{fn-decls})?,
  \text{mk-array-decl}
   (\text{driver-name})(\text{lower-bound})
   (\text{null})(\text{upper-bound})
   \rightarrow (\text{lower-bound} = 1 \rightarrow (\text{RANGE, driver-name}),
    \text{mk-exp2}(\text{SUB, mk-exp2}(\text{ADD,(RANGE, driver-name)}, \text{lower-bound}), 1)),
    \text{upper-bound})(\text{element-waveform-type-spec})) \]

\[ \text{mk-array-signal-elt-fn-decls}(\text{signal-duqn})(\text{driver-duqn})(\text{element-type-desc})(\text{lower-bound})(\text{upper-bound})
   (t)(p)(v)(stk) \]

\[ = (\text{is-array-tdesc?}(\text{element-type-desc})
  \rightarrow \text{let} \ \text{signal-els} = \text{mk-slice-elt-names-to}
    (\text{signal-duqn})(\text{lower-bound})(\text{upper-bound})
    \text{and} \ \text{driver-els} = \text{mk-slice-elt-names-to}
    (\text{driver-duqn})(\text{lower-bound})(\text{upper-bound}) \text{ in} \]
\[ \text{let} \ \text{expr}_1 = \text{real-lb(element-type-desc)} \text{ in} \]
\[ \mathbb{R} [\, [\text{expr}_1 ] \, (t)(p)(k)(v)(stk) \]

135
where
\[ k_1 = \lambda (e_1, f_1), v_1, stk_1. \]
let \( \text{expr}_2 = \text{real-ub(element-type-desc)} \) in
\[ R \parallel (\text{expr}_1) \parallel (t)(p)(k_1)(v_1)(stk_1) \]
where
\[ k_2 = \lambda (e_2, f_2), v_2, stk_2. \]
\[ \text{mk-array-signal-elt-fn-decls-aux} \]
\[ (\text{signal-elts})(\text{driver-elts})(\text{elt}(\text{element-type-desc})) \]
\[ (e_1)(e_2)(t)(p)(v_2)(stk_2), \]
let \( \text{scalar-signal-elts} = \text{mk-slice-elt-names-to} \)
\[ (\text{signal-duqn})(\text{lower-bound})(\text{upper-bound}) \]
and \( \text{scalar-driver-elts} = \text{mk-slice-elt-names-to} \)
\[ (\text{driver-duqn})(\text{lower-bound})(\text{upper-bound}) \) in
\[ \text{mk-scalar-signal-fn-decls} (\text{scalar-signal-elts}, \text{scalar-driver-elts}) \]
\[ \text{mk-array-signal-elt-fn-decls-aux} (\text{signal-duqn}^*)(\text{driver-duqn}^*) \]
\[ (\text{element-type-desc})(\text{lower-bound})(\text{upper-bound}) \]
\[ (t)(p)(v)(stk) \]
\[ = (\text{null}(\text{signal-duqn}^*) \rightarrow \epsilon, \]
let \( \text{signal-duqn} = \text{hd}(\text{signal-duqn}^*) \)
and \( \text{driver-duqn} = \text{hd}(\text{driver-duqn}^*) \) in
\[ \text{nconc} \]
\[ (\text{mk-array-signal-elt-fn-decls} \]
\[ (\text{signal-duqn})(\text{driver-duqn})(\text{element-type-desc})(\text{lower-bound})(\text{upper-bound}) \]
\[ (t)(p)(v)(stk), \]
\[ \text{mk-array-signal-elt-fn-decls-aux} \]
\[ (t!)(\text{signal-duqn}^*)]],(t!)(\text{driver-duqn}^*)) (\text{element-type-desc})(\text{lower-bound}) \]
\[ (\text{upper-bound})(t)(p)(v)(stk))) \]
\[ \text{mk-scalar-signal-fn-decls} (\text{signal-names}, \text{driver-names}) \]
\[ = (\text{null}(\text{signal-names}) \rightarrow \epsilon, \]
cons(\( \text{mk-scalar-signal-fn-decl} (\text{hd}(\text{signal-names}), \text{hd}(\text{driver-names})), \)
\[ \text{mk-scalar-signal-fn-decls} (\text{tl}(\text{signal-names}), \text{tl}(\text{driver-names})))) \]
\[ \text{mk-array-signal-dec-post-init} (\text{signal-duqn}^*)(\text{driver-duqn}^*)(e) \]
\[ (\text{type-desc})(\text{direction})(\text{lower-bound})(\text{upper-bound}) \]
\[ (\text{element-type-desc})(\text{element-waveform-type-desc}) \]
\[ (t)(p)(v)(stk) \]
\[ = (\text{direction} = \text{TO} \]
\[ \rightarrow \text{mk-array-signal-dec-post-init-to} \]
\[ (\text{signal-duqn}^*)(\text{driver-duqn}^*)(e)(\text{type-desc})(\text{lower-bound})(\text{upper-bound}) \]
\[ (\text{element-type-desc})(\text{element-waveform-type-desc})(t)(p)(v)(stk), \]
\[ \text{mk-array-signal-dec-post-init-down-to} \]
\[ (\text{signal-duqn}^*)(\text{driver-duqn}^*)(e)(\text{type-desc})(\text{lower-bound})(\text{upper-bound}) \]
\[ (\text{element-type-desc})(\text{element-waveform-type-desc})(t)(p)(v)(stk)) \]
\[ \text{mk-array-signal-dec-post-init-to} (\text{signal-duqn}^*)(\text{driver-duqn}^*)(e) \]
\[ (\text{type-desc})(\text{lower-bound})(\text{upper-bound}) \]
\[ (\text{element-type-desc})(\text{element-waveform-type-desc}) \]
\[ (t)(p)(v)(stk) \]
\[ = (\text{is-array-tdesc}?(\text{element-type-desc}) \]
\[ \rightarrow \text{let } \text{expr}_1 = \text{real-lb(element-type-desc)} \) in
\[ R \parallel (\text{expr}_1) \parallel (t)(p)(k_1)(v)(stk) \]
where
\[ k_1 = \lambda (e_1, f_1), v_1, stk_1. \]
let \( \text{expr}_2 = \text{real-ub(element-type-desc)} \) in
\[ R \parallel (\text{expr}_2) \parallel (t)(p)(k_2)(v_1)(stk_1) \]

136
where
\[ k_2 = \lambda(e_2,f_2),v_2,stk_2. \]
\[
\text{mk-array-signal-dec-post-init-elt-arrays-to}
\]
\[
\text{( signal-duqn*) (driver-duqn*) (e) (type-desc)}
\]
\[
\text{(lower-bound) (upper-bound) (element-type-desc)}
\]
\[
\text{(direction (element-type-desc)) (c1) (e2) (t) (p) (v2) (stk2)}.
\]
\[
\text{mk-array-signal-dec-post-init-elt-scalars-to}
\]
\[
\text{( signal-duqn*) (driver-duqn*) (e) (type-desc) (lower-bound) (upper-bound)}
\]
\[
\text{(element-type-desc) (element-waveform-type-desc) (t) (p) (v) (stk)}
\]
\[
\text{mk-array-signal-dec-post-init-downto (signal-duqn*) (driver-duqn*) (e)}
\]
\[
\text{(type-desc) (lower-bound) (upper-bound)}
\]
\[
\text{(element-type-desc) (element-waveform-type-desc) (t) (p) (v) (stk)}
\]
\[
= (\text{is-array-tdesc? (element-type-desc)})
\]
\[
\rightarrow \text{let expr1 = real-lb(element-type-desc) in}
\]
\[
\text{R} [\text{expr1}] \uparrow (t)(p)(k1)(v)(stk)
\]
\[
\text{where}
\]
\[
k_1 = \lambda(e1,f1),v1,stk1.
\]
\[
\text{let expr2 = real-ub(element-type-desc) in}
\]
\[
\text{R} [\text{expr2}] \uparrow (t)(p)(k2)(v1)(stk1)
\]
\[
\text{where}
\]
\[
k_2 = \lambda(e2,f2),v2,stk2.
\]
\[
\text{mk-array-signal-dec-post-init-elt-arrays-downto}
\]
\[
\text{(signal-duqn*) (driver-duqn*) (e) (type-desc)}
\]
\[
\text{(lower-bound) (upper-bound) (element-type-desc)}
\]
\[
\text{(direction (element-type-desc)) (c1) (e2) (t) (p) (v2) (stk2)}.
\]
\[
\text{mk-array-signal-dec-post-init-elt-scalars-downto}
\]
\[
\text{(signal-duqn*) (driver-duqn*) (e) (type-desc) (lower-bound) (upper-bound)}
\]
\[
\text{(element-type-desc) (element-waveform-type-desc) (t) (p) (v) (stk)}
\]
\[
\text{mk-array-signal-dec-post-init-elt-arrays-to (signal-duqn*) (driver-duqn*) (e)}
\]
\[
\text{(type-desc) (lower-bound) (upper-bound)}
\]
\[
\text{(elt-type-desc) (elt-direction) (elt-lower-bound) (elt-upper-bound)}
\]
\[
\text{(t) (p) (v) (stk)}
\]
\[
= (null (signal-duqn*)) \rightarrow \epsilon.
\]
\[
\text{let signal-duqn = hd (signal-duqn*)}
\]
\[
\text{and driver-duqn = hd (driver-duqn*) in}
\]
\[
nconc
\]
\[
\text{(let signal-elts = mk-slice-elt-names-to}
\]
\[
\text{(signal-duqn*) (lower-bound) (upper-bound)}
\]
\[
\text{and driver-elts = mk-slice-elt-names-to}
\]
\[
\text{(driver-duqn*) (lower-bound) (upper-bound)}
\]
\[
\text{mk-array-signal-dec-post-init-aux}
\]
\[
\text{(signal-elts) (driver-elts) (elt-type-desc) (elt-direction)}
\]
\[
\text{(elt-lower-bound) (elt-upper-bound) (elt-type-desc)}
\]
\[
\text{(element-waveform-type-desc) (elt-type-desc)) (t) (p) (v) (stk)}.
\]
\[
\text{mk-array-signal-dec-post-init-elt-arrays-to}
\]
\[
\text{(tl (signal-duqn*) (tl (driver-duqn*)) (tl (e)) (type-desc) (lower-bound)}
\]
\[
\text{(upper-bound) (elt-type-desc) (elt-direction) (elt-lower-bound)}
\]
\[
\text{(elt-upper-bound) (t) (p) (v) (stk) (t) (p) (v) (stk))}
\]
\[
\text{mk-array-signal-dec-post-init-elt-arrays-downto (signal-duqn*) (driver-duqn*) (e)}
\]
\[
\text{(type-desc) (lower-bound) (upper-bound)}
\]
\[
\text{(elt-type-desc) (elt-direction) (elt-lower-bound) (elt-upper-bound)}
\]
\[
\text{(t) (p) (v) (stk)}
\]
\[
= (null (signal-duqn*)) \rightarrow \epsilon.
\]

137
let signal-duqn = hd(signal-duqn*)
and driver-duqn = hd(driver-duqn*) in

ncconc
(let signal-elts = mk-slice-elt-names-downto
(signal-duqn)(lower-bound)(upper-bound)
and driver-elts = mk-slice-elt-names-downto
(driver-duqn)(lower-bound)(upper-bound) in
mk-array-signal-dec-post-init-init
(signal-elts)(driver-elts)(e)(elt-type-desc)(elt-direction)
(elt-lower-bound)(elt-upper-bound)(elt)(elt-type-desc)
(waveform-type-desc)(elt)(elt-type-desc))(t)(p)(v)(stk),

mk-array-signal-dec-post-init-elt-arrays-downto
(tl(signal-duqn*))((tl(driver-duqn*)))(tl(e))(type-desc)(lower-bound)
(upper-bound)(elt-type-desc)(elt-direction)(elt-lower-bound)
(elt-upper-bound)(t)(p)(v)(stk))

mk-array-signal-dec-post-init-elt-arrays-aux(signal-duqn*)(driver-duqn*)(e)
(type-desc)(direction)(lower-bound)(upper-bound)
(element-type-desc)(element-waveform-type-desc)
(t)(p)(v)(stk)

= (null(signal-duqn*)) → ε,
let signal-duqn = hd(signal-duqn*)
and driver-duqn = hd(driver-duqn*) in

ncconc
(mk-array-signal-dec-post-init
(signal-duqn)((driver-duqn))(hd(e))(type-desc)(direction)
(lower-bound)(upper-bound)(element-type-desc)(element-waveform-type-desc)
(t)(p)(v)(stk),

mk-array-signal-dec-post-init-elt-arrays-aux
(tl(signal-duqn*))((tl(driver-duqn*)))(tl(e))(type-desc)(direction)
(lower-bound)(upper-bound)(element-type-desc)(element-waveform-type-desc)
(t)(p)(v)(stk))

mk-array-signal-dec-post-init-elt-scalars-to(signal-duqn*)(driver-duqn*)(e)
(type-desc)(lower-bound)(upper-bound)
(element-type-desc)(element-waveform-type-desc)
(t)(p)(v)(stk)

= (null(signal-duqn*)) → ε,
let signal-duqn = hd(signal-duqn*)
and driver-duqn = hd(driver-duqn*) in
let initial-waveforms = init-array-signal-to
(signal-duqn)(driver-duqn)(e)(type-desc)
(element-type-desc)(lower-bound)(upper-bound) in

ncconc
(assign-array-to
(driver-duqn)(initial-waveforms)(element-waveform-type-desc)
(lower-bound)(0),

mk-array-signal-dec-post-init-elt-scalars-to
(tl(signal-duqn*))((tl(driver-duqn*)))(e)(type-desc)(lower-bound)
(stk))

mk-array-signal-dec-post-init-elt-scalars-downto(signal-duqn*)(driver-duqn*)(e)
(type-desc)(lower-bound)(upper-bound)
(element-type-desc)(element-waveform-type-desc)
(t)(p)(v)(stk)

= (null(signal-duqn*)) → ε,
let signal-duqn = hd(signal-duqn*)
    and driver-duqn = hd(driver-duqn*) in
let initial-waveforms = init-array-signal-down-to
    (signal-duqn)(driver-duqn)(e)(type-desc)
    (element-type-desc)(lower-bound)(upper-bound) in
nconc
    (assign-array-down-to
        (driver-duqn)(initial-waveforms)(element-waveform-type-desc)
        (upper-bound)(0),
    mk-array-signal-dec-post-init-elt-scalars-down-to
        (tl(signal-duqn*)')(tl(driver-duqn*)')(e)(type-desc)(lower-bound)
        (stk)))

(D7) D [ ETDEC id id+ ] (t)(p)(u)(v)(stk)
= (mk-decl-sd
    (hd(p))(e)(e)(e)
    (nconc(mk-etdec-post((id))(t)(p),u(v)(stk))))

mk-etdec-post(type-mark)(t)(p)
= let d = lookup-desc(type-mark)(t)(p) in
    mk-ennumlit-rels(d)(literals(d))

mk-enumlit-rels(d)(id*)
= (null(tl(id*)) -- e,
    let id1 = hd(id*)
    and id2 = hd(tl(id*)) in
    cons(mk-rel(d)((PRED,id1,id2)),mk-enumlit-rels(d)(tl(id*))))

The translation of an enumeration type declaration emits an SDVS declaration of the enumeration type.

(D8) D [ ATDEC id discrete-range type-mark ] (t)(p)(u)(v)(stk)
= let (direction,expr1,expr2) = discrete-range in
    let lower-bound = (direction = TO --> expr1, expr2)
    and upper-bound = (direction = TO --> expr2, expr1) in
    attributes-low-high
        ((id,lower-bound,upper-bound,(UNIVERSAL_INTEGER)))(t)(p)(u)(v)(stk)

attributes-low-high(id,lower-bound,upper-bound,attribute-type-mark)(t)(p)(u)(v)(stk)
= let decl1 = (DEC ,SYSGEN , (mk-tick-low(id)),attribute-type-mark,lower-bound)
    and decl2 = (DEC ,SYSGEN , (mk-tick-high(id)),attribute-type-mark,upper-bound) in
    let decl+ = (decl1,decl2) in
    D [ decl+ ] (t)(p)(u)(v)(stk)

mk-tick-low(id) = catenate(id, "LOW")

mk-tick-high(id) = catenate(id, "HIGH")

An array type declaration declares and initializes the `low and `high array type attributes.

(D9) D [ PACKAGE id decl* opt-id ] (t)(p)(u)(v)(stk)
= D [ decl* ] (t)(%id)(u)(v)(stk)
The declarations contained within a package are translated as usual, but in the package's context in the TSE, via the extended path %((p)(id)).

(D10) \[ \text{PACKAGEBODY id decl opt-id (t)(p)(u)(v)(stk)} \]
\[= \text{let pb-exit-desc = \langle *PACKAGE-BODY-EXIT \rangle id,p,\lambda v,s,u(v)(s) in} \]
\[ D[ decl^* ] (t)\%(p)(id))\(u_1)(v)(stk\text{-push}(pb\text{-exit-desc})(stk)) \]
\[\text{where u_1 = } \lambda v_1,stk_1,\text{pkg\text{-body\text{-exit}(v_1)(stk_1)}} \]

pkg-body-exit(v)(stk)
\[= \text{let } <tg,qname,p,g> = \text{hd(stk) in} \]
\[(\text{case } tg) \]
\[\text{*STKBOTTOM* } \rightarrow \text{model\text{-execution\text{-complete}(qname),} \]
\[\text{*UNDECLARE* } \rightarrow \text{g(\lambda v,v,\text{pkg\text{-body\text{-exit}(v)(stk\text{-pop(stk))},} } \]
\[\text{(*BEGIN* ) } \rightarrow \text{pkg\text{-body\text{-exit}(v)(stk\text{-pop(stk))},} \]
\[\text{(*PACKAGE-BODY-EXIT*, *LOOP-EXIT*, *SUBPROGRAM-RETURN* ) } \rightarrow \text{g(v)(stk\text{-pop(stk))},} \]
\[\text{OTHERWISE} \]
\[\rightarrow \text{impl\text{-error("Unknown execution stack descriptor with tag: "a",tg),)} \]

The declarations contained in a package body are translated in the package's context in the TSE, via the extended path %((p)(id)). A *PACKAGE-BODY-EXIT* descriptor is first pushed onto the execution stack to prevent the package's declarations from being unelaborated when the package body is exited.

(D11) \[ \text{PROCEDURE id proc-par-spec (t)(p)(u)(v)(stk) = u(v)(stk)} \]

(D12) \[ \text{FUNCTION id func-par-spec type-mark (t)(p)(u)(v)(stk) = u(v)(stk)} \]

(D13) \[ \text{SUBPROGBODY subprog-spec decl seq-stat opt-id (t)(p)(u)(v)(stk)} \]
\[= u(v)(stk) \]

Subprogram declarations need no Phase 2 translation, nor do subprogram bodies.

(D14) \[ \text{USE dotted-name (t)(p)(u)(v)(stk) = u(v)(stk)} \]

The effect of USE clauses has already been recorded in the TSE during Phase 1; no further Phase 2 translation is necessary.

(D15) \[ \text{STDEC id type-mark opt-discrete-range (t)(p)(u)(v)(stk)} \]
\[= \text{let } z = \text{hd(p)} \]
\[\text{and subtype-desc = lookup\text{-desc\text{-on\text{-path}(t)(p)(id) in} } \]
\[\text{let basetype-desc = base\text{-type(subtype\text{-desc} in} } \]
\[\text{let exp_1 = type\text{-tick\text{-low}(basetype\text{-desc) in} } \]
\[\text{and exp_2 = type\text{-tick\text{-low}(subetype\text{-desc) in} } \]
\[\text{and exp_3 = type\text{-tick\text{-high}(subetype\text{-desc) in} } \]
\[\text{and exp_4 = type\text{-tick\text{-high}(basetype\text{-desc) in} } \]
\[\text{R[ exp_1 ][ t(p)(k_1)(v)(stk) \}
\[\text{where k_1 = } \lambda (e_1,f_1,v_1,stk_1,} \]
\[\text{R[ exp_2 ][ t(p)(k_2)(v_1)(stk_1) \}
\[\text{where k_2 = } \lambda (e_2,f_2,v_2,stk_2,} \]
\[\text{R[ exp_3 ][ t(p)(k_3)(v_2)(stk_2) \}
\[\text{where k_3 = } \lambda (e_3,f_3,v_3,stk_3,} \]
\[\text{R[ exp_4 ][ t(p)(k_4)(v_3)(stk_3) \}
\[\text{where k_4 = } \lambda (e_4,f_4,v_4,stk_4,} \]

140
\[ k_3 = \lambda(e_3,f_2,v_3,stk_3). \]

\[ \mathcal{R} \otimes \text{expr}_{e_3} \otimes (t)(p)(k_4)(v_3)(stk_3) \]

where

\[ k_4 = \lambda(e_4,f_4,v_4,stk_4). \]

\[ \text{(mk-decl-ad} \]

\[ (z) \]

\[ (\text{nconc} \]

\[ (e_1 \]

\[ \rightarrow (\text{mk-rel} \]

\[ (\text{basetype-desc}) \]

\[ (\text{LE},e_1,e_2)), \]

\[ \epsilon), \]

\[ (e_4 \]

\[ \rightarrow (\text{mk-rel} \]

\[ (\text{basetype-desc}) \]

\[ (\text{LE},e_3,e_4)), \]

\[ \epsilon)))(\epsilon)(\epsilon) \]

\[ (u_1(v_4)(stk_4)) \]

where

\[ u_1 = \lambda v_5,stk_5. \]

\[ \text{attributes-low-high} \]

\[ ((\text{id},\text{expr}_2,\text{expr}_3, \]

\[ (\text{id},(\text{basetype-desc})))))(t)(p)(u) \]

\[ (v_5)(stk_5) \]

The Phase 2 semantics of subtype declarations generates a state delta with guards in the precondition to ensure that the subtype range falls within the range of allowable values for the subtype’s base type. Assuming this holds, the continuation in the state delta’s postcondition performs the Phase 2 processing of declarations and initializations for the 'low and 'high attributes representing the subtype bounds.

(D16) \[ \text{D } \otimes \text{ITDEC } \text{id } \text{discrete-range } \otimes (t)(p)(u)(v)(stk) \]

\[ \text{let } z = \text{hd}(p) \]

\[ \text{and integer-type-desc } = \text{lookup-desc-on-path}(t)(p)(\text{id}) \text{ in} \]

\[ \text{let } \text{expr}_1 = \text{type-tick-low(integer-type-desc) \text{ in}} \]

\[ \text{and } \text{expr}_2 = \text{type-tick-high(integer-type-desc) \text{ in}} \]

\[ \text{attributes-low-high} \]

\[ ((\text{id},\text{expr}_1,\text{expr}_2,(\text{UNIVERSAL}\_\text{INTEGER} )))(t)(p)(u)(v)(stk) \]

The Phase 2 semantics of integer type declarations simply processes declarations and initializations for the 'low and 'high attributes representing the integer type bounds.

### 8.4.5 Concurrent Statements

(CS0) \[ \text{CS } \otimes \epsilon \otimes (t)(p)(u)(v)(stk) = u(v)(stk) \]

(CS1) \[ \text{CS } \otimes \text{con-stat con-stat}^* \otimes (t)(p)(u)(v)(stk) \]

\[ = \text{CS } \otimes \text{con-stat } \otimes (t)(p)(u_1)(v)(stk) \]

\[ \text{where } u_1 = \lambda v,stk.\text{CS } \otimes \text{con-stat}^* \otimes (t)(p)(u)(v)(stk) \]

A list of concurrent statements is translated in order, from first to last.
8.4.6 Sequential Statements

A list of sequential statements is translated in order, from first to last.

NULL statements have no effect.

**ASSIGN**

```plaintext
(assign(d)(target, value))
```

CASE

```plaintext
(case direction(d) TO
    assign-array-to)
```
(target)(value)(elt((d))((ORIGIN,target))(0),
DOWNTO
→ assign-array-downto
  (target)(value)(elt((d))
  (mk-exp2
    (SUB,
    (mk-exp2(ADD,(ORIGIN,target),(RANGE,target)),1))(0),
OTHERWISE → impl-error("Illogical direction: "a",direction (d)),

(mk-rel((d))((EQ,pound(target),value)))),
is-string-tdesc?(d)
→ (is-constant-string?(value)
  → (case direction(d)
      TO
      → assign-array-to
        (target)(value)(elt((d))((ORIGIN,target))(0),
      DOWNTONO
      → assign-array-downto
        (target)(value)(elt((d))
        (mk-exp2
          (SUB,
          (mk-exp2(ADD,(ORIGIN,target),(RANGE,target)),1))(0),
OTHERWISE → impl-error("Illogical direction: "a",direction (d)),

(mk-rel((d))((EQ,pound(target),value)))),
(dotted-expri-p(value) → (mk-rel((d))((EQ,pound(target),value)))),
(case direction(d)
  TO → assign-array-to((target)(value)(elt((d))((ORIGIN,target))(0),
  DOWNTONO
  → assign-array-downto
    (target)(value)(elt((d))
    (mk-exp2
      (SUB,mk-exp2(ADD,(ORIGIN,target),(RANGE,target)),1))(0),
OTHERWISE → impl-error("Illogical direction: "a",direction(d))))),
*RECORDTYPE*
→ (dotted-expri-p(value) → assign-record(d)((target,value)),
assign-record-fields(components(d))((target,value)),
OTHERWISE → impl-error("Unrecognized Stage 3 VHDL type tag: "a",tag(d))

The translation of a variable assignment statement first translates its left and right parts, obtaining translated expressions and guard formulas. Note that the left part is translated by E and is therefore not dereferenced (by application of the dot function), as it would be if R were used instead. The preconditions of the generated state delta consists of the combined lists of guard formulas, and its mod list is the translated left part. Its postcondition asserts the new value of the left part place, and then asserts succeeding state deltas by appropriately using the continuation c. Assignments in Stage 3 VHDL can be scalar or can assign entire arrays. Entire array assignments are asserted element by element via auxiliary semantic function array-signal-assignment.

(SS4) SS [SIGASSN atmark delay-type ref waveform || (t)(p)(c)(v)(stk) = cons((EQ,pound(catenate(hd(p),"pc")),atmark),
let d = T [ref || (t)(p) in
(case tag(d)

143
(*BOOL*, *BIT*, *INT*, *REAL*, *TIME*, *ENUMTYPE*, *SUBTYPE*, *INT_TYPE*)
 → scalar-signal-assignment
 *ARRAYTYPE*
 → array-signal-assignment
 (atmark)(delay-type)(ref)(waveform)(t)(p)(c)(v)(stk),
 OTHERWISE
 → impl-error
   ("Signal assignment not implemented for object ",ref,
   " of type ",d))
 = ⨇ ref ⊑ t(p)(k)(v)(stk)
where
  k = λ(signal-name,guard),v,stk.
  let driver-name = name-driver(signal-name) in
    W ⊑ waveform ⊑ t(p)(wave-cont)(v)(stk)
where
  wave-cont = λ(trans*,guard*),v,stk.
  let all-guards = nconc(guard,guard*) in
    (delay-type = TRANSPORT)
 → (mk-sd
      (hd(p))(all-guards)(ε)((driver-name))
      (nconc
       (assign
        (waveform-type-desc(d))
        ((driver-name,
          mk-transport-update
          (dot(driver-name))(trans*))),
        c(v)(stk))),
      let earliest-new-transaction = hd(trans*) in
      (mk-sd
       (hd(p))
       (cons(mk-preemption
            (dot(driver-name))
            (earliest-new-transaction),all-guards))(ε)((driver-name))
       (nconc
        (assign
         (waveform-type-desc(d))
         ((driver-name,
           mk-inertial-update
           (dot(driver-name))(trans*))),
         c(v)(stk))),
      mk-sd
      (hd(p))
      (cons(mk-not
        (mk-preemption
         (dot(driver-name))
         (earliest-new-transaction)),
        all-guards))(ε)((driver-name))
      (nconc
       (assign
        (waveform-type-desc(d))
        ((driver-name,
          mk-inertial-update
          (dot(driver-name))(trans*))),
        c(v)(stk)))))

144
mk-transport-update(dot-driver)(trans*)
= cons(TRANSPORT_UPDATE ,cons(dot-driver,trans*))

mk-preemption(dot-driver)(transaction)
= (PREEMPTION ,dot-driver,transaction)

mk-inertial-update(dot-driver)(trans*)
= cons(INERTIAL_UPDATE ,cons(dot-driver,trans*))

mk-not(e) = (NOT ,e)

= let seq-stat* = cascade-array-signal-assignment
    (atmark)(delay-type)(ref)(waveform)(t)(p)(c)(v)(stk) in
    SS [ seq-stat* ] (t)(p)(c)(v)(stk)

= let array-refs = mk-array-refs(ref)(t)(p)(c)(v)(stk)
    and element-waves = mk-element-waves(agg-wave)(t)(p)(c)(v)(stk) in
    mk-scalar-signal-assignments(atmark)(delay-type)(array-refs)(element-waves)

mk-scalar-signal-assignments(atmark)(delay-type)(array-refs)(element-waves)
= (null(array-refs)) -> e,
    cons((SIGASSN ,atmark,delay-type,hd(array-refs),hd(element-waves)),
    mk-scalar-signal-assignments
    (atmark)(delay-type)(tl(array-refs))(tl(element-waves)))

mk-array-refs(ref)(t)(p)(c)(v)(stk)
= let d = T [ ref ] (t)(p) in
    let direction = direction(d)
    and expr1 = lb(d)
    and expr2 = ub(d) in
    R [ expr1 ] (t)(p)(k1)(v)(stk)
where
    k1 = λ(e1,f1),v1,stk1.
    R [ expr2 ] (t)(p)(k2)(v1)(stk1)
where
    k2 = λ(e2,f2),v2,stk2.
    let sref = hd(second(ref))
    and indices = (direction = TO
    -> gen-ascending-indices(e1)(e2),
    gen-descending-indices(e1)(e2)) in
    mk-array-refs-aux(sref)(indices)

gen-ascending-indices(min)(max)
= (min > max -> e, cons(min,gen-ascending-indices(min+1)(max)))

gen-descending-indices(min)(max)
= (max < min -> e, cons(max,gen-descending-indices(min)(max-1)))

mk-array-refs-aux(sref)(indices)
= (null(indices)) -> e,
    cons(REF ,sref,(INDEX ,(NUM ,hd(indices))))),
    mk-array-refs-aux(sref)(tl(indices)))
mk-element-waves(agg-wave)(t)(p)(c)(v)(stk)
= let aggregate-transactions = second(agg-wave) in
  let element-transaction-lists = mk-element-transaction-lists
    (aggregate-transactions)(t)(p)(c)(v)(stk) in
  mk-element-waves-aux(element-transaction-lists)

mk-element-transaction-lists(aggregate-transactions)(t)(p)(c)(v)(stk)
= (null(aggregate-transactions)→ ε, 
  cons(mk-transaction-list(hd(aggregate-transactions))(t)(p)(c)(v)(stk),
  mk-element-transaction-lists(tl(aggregate-transactions))(t)(p)(c)(v)(stk)))

mk-transaction-list(agg-trans)(t)(p)(c)(v)(stk)
= let ag-value-expr = second(agg-trans)
   and time-expr = third(agg-trans) in
  let element-value-exprs = (case hd(agg-value-expr)
    → mk-array-refs(agg-value-expr)(t)(p)(c)(v)(stk),
    (BITSTR, STR, PAGGR ) → hd(tl(agg-value-expr)),
    OTHERWISE
    → impl-error
    ("Illegal aggregate in transaction: ",
      agg-value-expr)) in
  mk-simultaneous-transactions(element-value-exprs)(time-expr)

mk-simultaneous-transactions(expr*)(time-expr)
= (null(expr*)→ ε,
  cons((TRANS , hd(expr*), time-expr),
  mk-simultaneous-transactions(tl(expr*))(time-expr))

(SS5) SS $ IF atmark cond-part else-part $ (t)(p)(c)(v)(stk)
  = cons((EQ , pound(catenate(hd(p),"\pc")),atmark),
      let seq-stat* = else-part in
      gen-if(cond-part*)(seq-stat*)(seq-stat)(t)(p)(c)(v)(stk))

gen-if(cond-part*)(seq-stat*)(ifclause)(t)(p)(c)(v)(stk)
= (null(cond-part*)→ SS $ [seq-stat* ] (t)(p)(c)(v)(stk),
  let (expr,seq-stat) = hd(cond-part*) in
  R $ expr $ (t)(p)(k)(v)(stk)
  where
  k = λ(e,f),v₁,stk₁ .
  (mk-sd
    (hd(p))(cons(e,f))(e)(ε)
    (let c₁ = λv₂,stk₂ SS $ [ seq-stat* ] (t)(p)(c)(v₂)(stk₂) in
      c₁(v₁)(stk₁)),
    mk-sd
    (hd(p))(cons(mk-not(e,f))(e)(ε)
    (let c₂ = λv₃,stk₃ .
        gen-if
        (tl(cond-part*))(seq-stat*)(e)(t)(p)(c)(v₃)(stk₃) in
      c₂(v₁)(stk₁)))))

The abstract syntax of a Stage 3 VHDL IF statement consists of a finite, nonempty list of cond-parts followed by a (possibly empty) else-part. Each cond-part corresponds to an IF expr THEN seq-stats or an ELIF expr THEN seq-stats construct in the concrete
syntax. Thus each cond-part must be translated into two state deltas: one for the case where expr evaluates to true and the other where it evaluates to false. The translation is performed by auxiliary semantic function gen-if, which takes as arguments (among others): the cond-part list and the seq-stats comprising the else-part. Successive recursive calls of gen-if process the first element of their cond-part list, reducing it to empty. When the cond-part list is empty, gen-if produces the translation of the else-part. The function mk-not constructs the logical negation of its argument.

(SS6) \[ \begin{align*} &\text{SS} \sqsubseteq \text{CASE \ atmark expr case-alt}^+ \sqsubseteq (t)(p)(c)(v)(\text{stk}) \\ &\quad = \text{cons}((\text{EQ}, \text{pound}((\text{catenate}(\text{hd}(p), "\text{pc}")), \text{atmark})), \text{R} \sqsubseteq \text{expr} \sqsubseteq (t)(p)(k)(v)(\text{stk})) \\ &\quad \text{where} \\ &\quad k = \lambda(e,f,v,\text{stk}). \\ &\quad \text{let } \text{d} = \text{SS} \sqsubseteq \text{expr} \sqsubseteq (t)(p) \text{ in} \\ &\quad \text{gen-case}(e)(d)((e,f))(\text{case-alt}^*)((t)(p)(c)(v)(\text{stk})) \end{align*} \]

gen-case[g](d,e,f)(case-alt*)(t)(p)(c)(v)(stk)
\[
= \text{null}(\text{case-alt}^*)\rightarrow e, \\
\text{let } (h,sd) = \text{gen-alt}(g)(d)((e,f))((\text{hd}(\text{case-alt}^*))((t)(p)(c)(v)(\text{stk})) \text{ in} \\ \text{cons}(sd, \text{gen-case}(\text{append}(g,h))(d)((e,f))(\text{tl}(\text{case-alt}^*))((t)(p)(c)(v)(\text{stk}))) \\ \text{gen-alt}(g)(d)(e,f)(\text{case-alt})(t)(p)(c)(v)(\text{stk}) \\ = \text{let case-alt-tag} = \text{hd}(\text{case-alt}) \text{ in} \\ \text{(case-alt-tag} = \text{CASEOTHERS} \\ \rightarrow \text{let seq-stat}^* = \text{hd}(\text{tl}(\text{case-alt})) \text{ in} \\ \text{let } c_1 = \lambda v_1, \text{stk}_1 \text{ SS} \sqsubseteq \text{seq-stat}^* \sqsubseteq (t)(p)(c)(v_1)(\text{stk}_1) \text{ in} \\ (e, \\ \text{mk-sd} \\ (\text{hd}(p))(\text{append}(f,(\text{mk-not}(\text{mk-ors}(g)))))(\text{e}(e) \\ (c_1(v)(\text{stk}))), \\ \text{let } (\text{case-set},\text{seq-stat}^*) = \text{tl}(\text{case-alt}) \text{ in} \\ \text{let } c_1 = \lambda v_1, \text{stk}_1 \text{ SS} \sqsubseteq \text{seq-stat}^* \sqsubseteq (t)(p)(c)(v_1)(\text{stk}_1) \text{ in} \\ \text{let } h = \text{append}(f,\text{gen-guard}(\text{case-set}))(d)(e)(t)(p) \text{ in} \\ (h,\text{mk-sd}(\text{hd}(p))(h)(e)(e)(c_1(v)(\text{stk})))) \\ \text{mk-ors(disj)} \\ = (\text{case length}(\text{disj})) \\ 1 \rightarrow \text{hd}(\text{disj}), \\ 2 \rightarrow \text{mk-or}(\text{hd}(\text{disj}))(\text{hd}(\text{tl}(\text{disj}))), \\ \text{OTHERWISE} \rightarrow \text{mk-or}(\text{hd}(\text{disj}))((\text{mk-ors}(\text{tl}(\text{disj})))) \\ \text{mk-or}(e_1,e_2) \\ = (\text{null}(e_1)\rightarrow e_2, \\ \text{null}(e_2)\rightarrow e_1, \\ \text{consp}(e_1)\land \text{consp}(e_2) \\ \rightarrow \text{hd}(e)\equiv OR \\ \rightarrow \text{hd}(e_2)\equiv OR \rightarrow \text{cons}(OR,\text{append}(\text{tl}(e_1),\text{tl}(e_2))), \text{append}(e_1,e_2)), \\ \text{hd}(e_2)\equiv OR \rightarrow \text{nconc}((OR, e_1),\text{tl}(e_2)), \\ (OR, e_1,e_2)), \\ (OR, e_1,e_2)) \\ \text{gen-guard}(\text{discrete-range}^*)(d)(e)(t)(p) \\ = (\text{null}(\text{discrete-range}^*)\rightarrow e, \\ \text{let } (\text{direction},\text{expr}_1,\text{expr}_2) = \text{hd}(\text{discrete-range}^*) \text{ in} \\ \text{R} \sqsubseteq \text{expr}_1 \sqsubseteq (t)(p)(k_1)(e)(e) \\ \text{let } (\text{direction},\text{expr}_1,\text{expr}_2) = \text{hd}(\text{discrete-range}^*) \text{ in} \\ \text{R} \sqsubseteq \text{expr}_1 \sqsubseteq (t)(p)(k_1)(e)(e) \]
where

\[ k_1 = \lambda(e_1, f_1), v_1, stk_1. \]

\[ (\text{expr}_1 = \text{expr}_2 \quad \text{let} \quad h = \text{nconc}(f_1, (\text{mk-rel}(d)(\{(\text{EQ}, e, e_1))\})) \quad \text{in} \]

\[ (\text{null}(\text{tl}(\text{discrete-range}^*)) \rightarrow h, \quad \text{(cons}(\text{OR}, \quad \text{cons}(\text{hd}(h)), \text{gen-guard}(\text{tl}(\text{discrete-range}^*))(d)(e)(t)(p))))), \]

\[ R [\; \text{expr}_2 \; ] (t)(p)(k_2)(v_1)(stk_1) \]

where

\[ k_2 = \lambda(e_2, f_2), v_2, stk_2. \]

\[ \text{let} \quad h = \text{nconc} \]

\[ (f_1, f_2, \quad \text{(direction} = \text{TO} \quad \rightarrow ((\text{AND} , \text{mk-rel}(d)(\{(\text{GE}, e, e_1))}, \quad \text{mk-rel}(d)(\{(\text{LE}, e, e_2))\})), \]

\[ ((\text{AND} , \text{mk-rel}(d)(\{(\text{LE}, e, e_1))}, \quad \text{mk-rel}(d)(\{(\text{GE}, e, e_2))\})) \quad \text{in} \]

\[ \text{(cons}(\text{OR}, \quad \text{cons}(\text{hd}(h)), \quad \text{gen-guard}(\text{tl}(\text{discrete-range}^*))(d)(e)(t)(p)))) \]

The abstract syntax of a CASE statement consists of a selector expression followed by a finite, nonempty list of case alternatives. Each case alternative consists of a list of sequential statements, preceded either by a nonempty list of discrete ranges (indicated by CASECHOICE) or (for the last alternative only) by CASEOTHERS. Each of these discrete range lists represents a set of values, called a case selection set. If the selector expression evaluates to one of these values, then the corresponding sequential statement list is executed, after which control passes to the successor of the CASE statement. CASEOTHERS represents a case selection set that is the complement of the union of all of the other case selection sets relative to the set of values in the selector expression’s type. Phase 1 has ensured that no case selection sets intersect.

The Phase 2 translation of a CASE statement first processes its selector expression, obtaining a translated expression and a guard formula. The translation is completed by the function gen-case, which takes the following arguments:

- a formula, initially empty, that is the disjunction of formulas representing the case selection sets of case alternatives translated so far in this CASE statement — this formula’s negation represents the case selection set indicated by CASEOTHERS (if present) in the CASE statement;

- the basic type of the selector expression (and the case selection set elements);

- the selector expression’s translation and guard formula; and

- a list of case alternatives.

Each successive recursive call to gen-case processes the first element of its case alternative list, reducing the list to empty, at which time processing terminates normally. Each case alternative is processed by auxiliary semantic function gen-alt, which returns a formula.
representing the case selection set for that alternative and a state delta representing the execution of the corresponding sequential statement list. This formula and state delta are collected by \texttt{gen-case}; the final result returned by \texttt{gen-case} is a list of state deltas. The function \texttt{gen-guard} converts discrete range lists into formulas representing case selection sets. The function \texttt{mk-or(formula₁, formula₂)} constructs the logical disjunction of two formulas; if one of the formulas is empty, then \texttt{mk-or} ignores it and returns the nonempty one.

(SS7) \[
\text{SS} \mid \text{LOOP atmark id seq-stat* opt-id } \mid (t)(p)(c)(v)(stk) = \text{let lp-desc = } \langle \text{LOOP-EXIT*}, \text{id}, \text{p}, \lambda v.s.c(v)(s) \rangle \text{ in} \\
\quad \text{let stk₀ = stk-push(lp-desc)(stk) in} \\
\quad \quad \text{cons(EQ, pound(catenate(hd(p), "\text{pc}"), atmark)}, \\
\quad \quad \quad \text{loop-infinite(seq-stat)(id)(seq-stat*)(t)(p)(c)(v)(stk₀))}
\]

\[
\text{loop-infinite(seq-stat)(id)(seq-stat*)(t)(p)(c)(v)(stk)} = \text{let } c₁ = \lambda v stk. \\
\quad \text{SS } \mid \text{seq-stat* } \mid (t)(p)(c₂)(v)(stk) \\
\quad \quad \text{where} \\
\quad \quad \quad c₂ = \lambda v stk. \\
\quad \quad \quad \text{loop-infinite(seq-stat)(id)(seq-stat*)(t)(p)(c)(v)(stk) in} \\
\quad \text{(mk-sd(hd(p)))(e)(e)(c₁(v)(stk))})
\]

(SS8) \[
\text{SS } \mid \text{WHILE atmark id expr seq-stat* opt-id } \mid (t)(p)(c)(v)(stk) = \text{let lp-desc = } \langle \text{LOOP-EXIT*}, \text{id}, \text{p}, \lambda v.s.c(v)(s) \rangle \text{ in} \\
\quad \text{let stk₀ = stk-push(lp-desc)(stk) in} \\
\quad \quad \text{cons(EQ, pound(catenate(hd(p), "\text{pc}"), atmark)}, \\
\quad \quad \quad \text{loop-while(seq-stat)(id)(expr)(seq-stat*)(t)(p)(c)(v)(stk₀))}
\]

\[
\text{loop-while(seq-stat)(id)(expr)(seq-stat*)(t)(p)(c)(v)(stk)} = \text{R } \mid \text{expr } \mid (t)(p)(k)(v)(stk) \\
\quad \text{where} \\
\quad \quad k = \lambda (e, f), v stk. \\
\quad \quad \text{let } c₁ = \lambda v stk. \\
\quad \quad \quad \text{SS } \mid \text{seq-stat* } \mid (t)(p)(c₂)(v)(stk) \\
\quad \quad \quad \text{where} \\
\quad \quad \quad \quad c₂ = \lambda v stk. \\
\quad \quad \quad \quad \text{loop-while} \\
\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{(seq-stat)(id)(expr)(seq-stat*)(t)(p)(c)(v)} \\
\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{(stk) in} \\
\quad \text{(mk-sd} \\
\quad \quad \text{(hd(p))(cons(e, f))(e)(e)(c₁(v)(stk))),} \\
\quad \text{mk-sd} \\
\quad \quad \text{(hd(p))(cons(mk-not(e, f))(e)(e)} \\
\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{(c(v)(stk-pop(stk))))})
\]

(SS9) \[
\text{SS } \mid \text{FOR atmark id ref discrete-range seq-stat* opt-id } \mid (t)(p)(c)(v)(stk) = \text{let } d = \text{T } \mid \text{ref } \mid (t)(p) \text{ in} \\
\quad \text{let lp-desc = } \langle \text{LOOP-EXIT*}, \text{id}, p, \\
\text{\lambda v.s.c(v)(s) } \rangle \text{ in} \\
\quad \text{let stk₀ = stk-push(lp-desc)(stk) in} \\
\quad \text{let } \text{direction, expr₁, expr₂} = \text{discrete-range in} \\
\quad \quad \text{cons(EQ, pound(catenate(hd(p), "\text{pc}"), atmark)}, \\
\quad \quad \quad \text{R } \mid \text{expr } \mid (t)(p)(k₁)(v)(stk)}
\]

149
\[ k_1 = \lambda(e_1, f_1), v_1, stk_1. \]
\[ R \llbracket expr \rrbracket (t)(p)(k_2)(v_1)(stk_1) \]
where
\[ k_2 = \lambda(e_2, f_2), v_2, stk_2. \]

let bk-desc = \{\text{*BLOCK-EXIT*}, id, p, \lambda v, s, c(v)(s)\} in
let decl = (\text{DEC}, \text{CONST},
\text{(last(hd(hd(tl(ref))))),}
\text{(hd(d)), hd(ttl(discrete-range)))}) in
\[ D \llbracket decl \rrbracket (t)(\%p)(id)(u)(v)
\text{(stk-push(bk-desc)(stk_0))} \]
where
\[ u = \lambda v_3, stk_3. \]

let bg-desc = \{\text{*BEGIN*}, id, \%p(id),
\lambda v, s, c(v)(s)\} in

\text{(mk-sd}
\text{(hd(p))(nconc(f_1, f_2))(\varepsilon)(\varepsilon)
\text{(case tag(d))}
\text{*INT*}

\text{let final-iter-val = eval-expr}
\text{(e_2) in}
loop-for-int
\text{(seq-stat)(ref)(d)}
\text{(direction)}
\text{(final-iter-val)}
\text{(seq-stat\*)(t)(\%p(id))(c_1)}
\text{(v_3)}
\text{(stk-push(bg-desc)(stk_3)),}

\text{*ENUMTYPE*}

\text{let initial-iter-val = eval-expr}
\text{(e_1)}
and final-iter-val = eval-expr
\text{(e_2)}
and enum-lits = literals
\text{(d) in}
let parameter-updates = tl(get-loop-enum-param-vars
\text{(initial-iter-val)}
\text{(final-iter-val)}
\text{(direction)}
\text{(enum-lite)) in}
loop-for-enum
\text{(seq-stat)(ref)(d)}
\text{(direction)}
\text{(parameter-updates)}
\text{(final-iter-val)}
\text{(seq-stat\*)(t)(\%p(id))}
\text{(c_1)(v_3)}
\text{(stk-push}
\text{(bg-desc)(stk_3)),}

\text{OTHERWISE}

\text{impl-error}
\text{("Illegal FOR loop parameter type: "a",}
\text{d))})

where
\[ c_1 = \lambda v_4, stk_4. \]
\text{block-exit(v_4)(stk_4))}
where
k = \lambda (e,f),v,stk.
R \[ ref \] (t)(p)(k1)(v)(stk)
where
k1 = \lambda (c1,f1),v1,stk1.
let c0 = \lambda v0,stk0.
SS \[ seq-stat* \] (t)(p)(c1)(v0)(stk0)
where
c1 = \lambda v2,stk2.
(mk-sd
\( (hd(p))(e)(e)(e) \)
(cons(mk-rel
\( (d) \)
(((EQ ,pound(e),
(direction = TO
\( \rightarrow \) mk-exp2(ADD ,e1,1),
mk-exp2(SUB ,e1,1)))))

loop-for-int
(seq-stat)(ref)(d)(direction)
(final-iter-val)(seq-stat*)(t)
(p)(c)(v2)(stk2))) in

(mk-sd
\( (hd(p)) \)
(cons(mk-rel
\( (d) \)
(((direction = TO \rightarrow LE , GE ),e1,final-iter-val),f1))(e)(e)(c0(v)(stk)),

mk-sd
\( (hd(p)) \)
(cons(mk-rel
\( (d) \)
(((direction = TO \rightarrow GT , LT ),e1,final-iter-val),f1))(e)\( (c(v)(stk-pop(stk)))) \)

where
k = \lambda (e,f),v,stk.
R \[ ref \] (t)(p)(k1)(v)(stk)
where
k1 = \lambda (c1,f1),v1,stk1.
let c0 = \lambda v0,stk0.
SS \[ seq-stat* \] (t)(p)(c1)(v0)(stk0)
where
c1 = \lambda v2,stk2.
(parameter-updates
\( \rightarrow \) (mk-sd
\( (hd(p))(e)(e)(e) \)
(cons(mk-rel
\( (d) \)
(((EQ ,pound(e),
hd(parameter-updates))),
loop-for-enum
(seq-stat)(ref)(d)
(direction)
(tl(parameter-updates)))

151
(final-iter-val)(seq-stat*)
(t)(p)(c)(v2)(stk2)),

(mk-sd)

(hd(p))(e)(e)
(c(v)(stk-pop(stk)))) in

(mk-sd)

(hd(p))

(cons(mk-rel)

(d)

(\((\text{direction} = \text{TO} \rightarrow \text{LE} , \text{GE} ),e_1,\text{final-iter-val})),f_1))(e)(e)(c_0(v)(stk)),

mk-sd

(hd(p))

(cons(mk-rel)

(d)

(\((\text{direction} = \text{TO} \rightarrow \text{GT} , \text{LT} ),e_1,\text{final-iter-val})),f_1))(e)(e)

(c(v)(stk-pop(stk))))

A loop — i.e., a \text{LOOP}, \text{WHILE}, or \text{FOR} statement — has a label (used for leaving that loop by means of an \text{EXIT} statement) and a body consisting of sequential statements. When a loop is entered, a new local environment is created (signified by an extended path in the TSE), and a \text{*LOOP-EXIT*} descriptor is pushed onto the execution stack, to be used by \text{EXIT} statements to leave the loop properly. The continuation in the descriptor is that of the loop statement itself.

In the case of a simple \text{LOOP} statement, the loop is nonterminating, and a \text{recursive} state delta is generated by auxiliary semantic function \text{loop-infinite}.

In the case of a \text{WHILE} statement, auxiliary semantic function \text{loop-while} first processes the control expression, yielding its translation and a guard formula, and then uses these items to generate two state deltas, one of which is recursive. The recursive state delta represents the situation where the control expression is \text{true} and the loop’s body is executed; recursion stems from the appearance of \text{loop-while} in the continuation of the loop body’s translation. The execution stack remains unchanged in this case. The other state delta represents the case where the loop is exited “naturally” by virtue of its control expression having the value \text{false}. The postcondition of this state delta is the loop statement’s continuation applied to the result of popping the loop statement’s descriptor from the execution stack.

The case of a \text{FOR} statement is analogous to that of the \text{WHILE} statement, only more complex technically.
mk-sd
(hd(p))(cons(mk-not(e),f))(e)(e)
(c(v_1)(stk_1)))

exit(loop-name)(v)(stk)
= let <tg,id,p,g> = hd(stk) in
  (case tg
    *LOOP-EXIT*
      ¬ (¬null(loop-name) ∧ id ≠ loop-name → exit(loop-name)(v)(stk-pop(stk)),
          g(v)(stk-pop(stk))),
    *UNDECLARE* → g((λvv,s.exit(loop-name)(vv)(s))(v)(stk),
    (*BEGIN*,*BLOCK-EXIT*) → exit(loop-name)(v)(stk-pop(stk)),
    OTHERWISE → execution-error("*** EXECUTION ERROR -- ILLEGAL EXIT ***")
  )

An EXIT statement:

- transfers control from the interior of a loop to the immediate successor of that loop,
  provided that the EXIT statement’s condition (if any) is satisfied; and

- adjusts the state of SDVS to reflect that transfer of control.

The loop being exited can be named in the EXIT statement; Phase 1 has ensured that an
appropriate label is used. If a loop is named, then that loop is exited. If no name appears,
then the smallest loop enclosing the EXIT statement is exited. The EXIT statement may be
enclosed within a system of nested loops. When the loop statement is exited, these other
loops must first be exited in the order opposite that in which they were entered. When a
FOR loop is exited, the effect of its implicit local declaration of the iteration parameter is
reversed by encountering an *UNDECLARE* descriptor on the execution stack.

The translation of an EXIT statement first processes its control expression (which may be
empty), resulting in a translated expression and a guard formula. If the control expression
is nonempty, two state deltas are generated. The first represents the case where the control
expression has the value true; in this case the exit process proceeds by invoking the semantic
function exit, which appears in the state delta’s postcondition. The other state delta
represents the case where the control expression has the value false, whereupon the exit
does not occur and control passes to the immediate successor of the EXIT statement. If the
control expression is empty, the exit is unconditional; the second state delta is not even
generated.

(SS11) SS [[ CALL atmark ref ]] (t)(p)(c)(v)(stk)
    = cons((EQ ,pound(catenate(hd(p),"\pc"),atmark),
          let basic-ref = second(ref) in
          let (tg,q,id) = hd(basic-ref) in
          let d = t(q)(id) in
          let expr* = second(second(basic-ref)) in

    gen-call(ref)(d)(expr*)(gen-guards?)(no-unbind?)(t)(p)(c)(v)(stk)
    = let z = hd(p)
        and q = %((path(d))(idf(d)) in
        let (decl*,seq-stat*) = body(d) in

153
where
u = λv₁, stk₁.
let sp-desc = <*SUBPROGRAM-RETURN*, idf(d), p, λv, s, c(v)(s)>
and par-desc = <*UNDECLARE*, collect-allpars(extract-pars(d)(t)), p, λc₁, v₄, stk₄.
(mk-sd
  (z)(e)(e)(e)
  (cons(EQ, pound(catenate(z, "\pc")),
    (EXITED, σ(path(d))(idf(d)))),
  unbind-parameters
  (ref)(d)(expr*)(no-unbind?)(t)(p)(c₁)
  (v₄)(stk₄)),
(mk-sd
  (z)
  (((EQ, dot(catenate(z, "\pc")),
    (EXITED, σ(path(d))(idf(d)))),)(e)(e)
  unbind-parameters
  (ref)(d)(expr*)(no-unbind?)(t)(p)(c₁)(v₄)
  (stk₄))>) in
let stk₅ = stk-push(par-desc)(stk-push(sp-desc)(stk₁)) in
(mk-sd
  (z)(e)(e)(e)
  (cons(EQ, pound(catenate(z, "\pc")),
    (AT, σ(path(d))(idf(d)))),
  u₂(v₁)(stk₅))])
where
u₂ = λv₅, stk₆.
  (null(characterizations(d))
    → D [ decl* ] (t)(q)(u₁)(v₅)(stk₆),
    null(seq-stat*))
  → gen-characterizations
    (e)(p)(characterizations(d))(c₂)(v₅)(stk₆)
    where
    c₂ = λv₇, stk₇.
    unbind-parameters
    (ref)(d)(expr*)(no-unbind?)(t)(p)(c₃)
    (vr)(stk₇)
    where c₃ = λv₅, stk₆. block-exit(v₅)(stk₆),
impl-error
("Offline Characterization not yet implemented
 for procedures with nonempty bodies !")
where
u₁ = λv₂, stk₂.
let bg-desc = <*BEGIN*, idf(d), q, λv, s, c₁(vv)(s)>
in
SS [ seq-stat* ] (t)(q)(c₁)(v₂)(stk-push(bg-desc)(stk₂))
where c₁ = λv₃, stk₃. block-exit(v₃)(stk₃)
gen-characterizations(sds)(p)(characterizations)(c)(v)(stk)
= (null(characterizations)) → fix-characterized-sds(sds)(c)(v)(stk)),
let (q, id, parnames, pre, mod) = hd(characterizations) in
gen-characterizations
(cons(gen-characterization(hd(p))(σ(q)(id))(parnames)(pre)(mod)(post)(v), sds)
(p)(tl(characterizations))(c)(v)(stk))
gen-characterization(z)(qid)(parnames)(pre)(mod)(post)(v)
= let sd = mk-sd
  (z)(((EQ,dot(catenate(z,"\pc")),(AT,qid)))(e)(mod)
     (append
      (post,((EQ,pound(catenate(z,"\pc")),(EXITED,qid)))))
    ) in
  subst-vars(parenames)(v)(sd)
= let z = hd(p)
  and q = %(path(d))(idf(d))
  and par-assoc-list = extract-pars(d)(t) in
  (null(par-assoc-list)—u(v)(stk),
   let all-formals = get-qids(collect-allpars(par-assoc-list))(t)(q)
     and to-formals = get-qids(collect-topars(par-assoc-list))(t)(q)
     and type-descriptors = collect-topars-types(par-assoc-list)
     and from-actuals = collect-fromargs(actuals)(par-assoc-list)
   in
   let v₀ = push-universe(v)(z)(all-formals) in
   let qual-all-formals = get-qualif-ids(all-formals)(v₀)
     and qual-to-formals = get-qualif-ids(to-formals)(v₀)
   in
   (mk-decl-sd
    (z)(e)(e)(z))
     (nconc
      (mk-qual-id-coverings(all-formals)(qual-all-formals)(z)(v)(t),
       mk-par-decs(q)(par-assoc-list)(p)(t)(v₀),
       (null(qual-to-formals)—u(v₀)(stk),
        let expr* = from-actuals in
        MR [ expr* ] (k)(p)(h)(v₀)(stk)
        where
        h = λ(e*,f*),v₁,stk₁.
        u₁(v₁)(stk₁)
        where
        u₁ = λv₂,stk₂.
        let precondition = (gen-guards?
          — nconc
          (mk-constraint-guards
           (e*)(type-descriptors)
           (t)(p)(v₂)(stk₂),f*),
           f*)
        in
        (mk-decl-sd
         (z)(precondition)(e)(qual-to-formals)
         (nconc
          (assign-multiple
           (qual-to-formals)(type-descriptors)(e*),
           u(v₂)(stk₂)))))))

extract-pars(d)(t)
= let signatures = signatures(d) in
  let signature = hd(signatures) in
  (null(tl(signatures))—pars(signature),
   extract-poly-pars(pars(signature))(t))

extract-poly-pars(par-assoc-list)(t)
= (null(par-assoc-list)→ ε,
   let par = hd(par-assoc-list) in
   cons((hd(par),(hd(second(par)),poly-type-desc(t))),
     extract-poly-pars(tl(par-assoc-list))(t)))
collect-allpars(par-assoc-list)
= (null(par-assoc-list)→ ε,
   let (id,w) = hd(par-assoc-list) in
   cons(id,collect-allpars(tl(par-assoc-list))))
collect-topars(par-assoc-list) = (null(par-assoc-list) → ϵ,
   let (id,w) = hd(par-assoc-list) in
   (ref-mode(tmode(w)) ∈ (REF VAL)
     → cons(id,collect-topars(tl(par-assoc-list))),(collect-topars(tl(par-assoc-list))))
)

collect-fromargs(actuals)(par-assoc-list) = (null(par-assoc-list) → ϵ,
   let (id,w) = hd(par-assoc-list) in
   (ref-mode(tmode(w)) ∈ (REF VAL)
     → cons((id,collect-fromargs(tl(actuals)))(tl(par-assoc-list))),(collect-fromargs(tl(actuals)))(tl(par-assoc-list))))
)

collect-frompars(par-assoc-list)(p) = (null(par-assoc-list) → ϵ,
   let (id,w) = hd(par-assoc-list) in
   (ref-mode(tmode(w)) ∈ (REF OUT)
     → cons((REF ,((SREF ,p,id))),
       collect-frompars(tl(par-assoc-list))(p)),
       collect-frompars(tl(par-assoc-list))(p)))
)

collect-toargs(actuals-ids)(par-assoc-list) = (null(actuals-ids) → ϵ,
   let (id,w) = hd(par-assoc-list) in
   (ref-mode(tmode(w)) ∈ (REF OUT)
     → cons((id,collect-toargs(tl(actuals-ids)))(tl(par-assoc-list))),(collect-toargs(tl(actuals-ids)))(tl(par-assoc-list))))
)

collect-topars-types(par-assoc-list) = (null(par-assoc-list) → ϵ,
   let (id,w) = hd(par-assoc-list) in
   (ref-mode(tmode(w)) ∈ (REF VAL)
     → cons((id,collect-topars-types(tl(par-assoc-list))),(collect-topars-types(tl(par-assoc-list))))
)
)

collect-toargs-types(actuals)(par-assoc-list)(t)(p) = (null(actuals) → ϵ,
   let (id,w) = hd(par-assoc-list) in
   (ref-mode(tmode(w)) ∈ (REF OUT)
     → let expr = hd(actuals) in
       cons((expr ∈ t)(p),
         collect-toargs-types(tl(actuals))(tl(par-assoc-list))(t)(p)),
         collect-toargs-types(tl(actuals))(tl(par-assoc-list))(t)(p))))
)

   where h = λe∗,p,v,stk.mk-constraint-guards(e∗)(d∗)(t)(p)(v)(stk)

mk-constraint-guards(e∗)(d∗)(t)(p)(v)(stk) = (null(e∗) → ϵ,
   let e = hd(e∗)
     and d = hd(d∗) in
   (¬(tag(d) ∈ (*INT* *SUBTYPE* *INT_TYPE*)) )
     → mk-constraint-guards(tl(e∗))(tl(d∗))(t)(p)(v)(stk),
   (tag(d) = *INT∗ → mk-constraint-guards(tl(e∗))(tl(d∗))(t)(p)(v)(stk),
     let dd = (tag(d) = *SUBTYPE* → base-type(d), parent-type(d)))
\( \text{and expr1} = \text{type-tick-low}(d) \)
\( \text{and expr2} = \text{type-tick-high}(d) \) in
\( R \{ expr1 \} (t)(p)(k_1)(v)(stk) \)
where
\( k_1 = \lambda (e_1,f_1),v_1,stk_1. \)
\( R \{ expr2 \} (t)(p)(k_2)(v_1)(stk_1) \)
where
\( k_2 = \lambda (e_2,f_2),v_2,stk_2. \)
\( \text{nconc} \)
\( ((e_1 \rightarrow (\text{mk-rel}(dd)(((\text{LE} , e_1, e_2)) , \varepsilon)), (e_2 \rightarrow (\text{mk-rel}(dd)(((\text{LE} , e_2, e_2)) , \varepsilon)), \text{mk-constraint-guards(tl(e^*)}(tl(d^*)))(t)(p)(v)(stk)))) \)

\( \text{mk-par-decls(q)}(\text{par-assoc-list})(p)(t)(v) \)
\( = (\text{null(par-assoc-list)} \rightarrow \varepsilon, \)
\( \text{let } (id,w) = \text{hd(par-assoc-list)} \) in
\( \text{cons((DECLARE ,qualified-id(qid(t(q)(id)))(v)),mk-type-spec(tdesc(w))(t)(p)),} \)
\( \text{mk-par-decls(q)(tl(par-assoc-list))(p)(t)(v))) \)

\( \text{assign-multiple}(duqn^*)(\text{type-descriptors})(e^*) \)
\( = (\text{null(duqn^*)} \rightarrow \varepsilon, \)
\( \text{let target = hd(duqn^*)} \)
\( \text{and d = hd(type-descriptors)} \)
\( \text{and source = hd(e^*)} \) in
\( \text{nconc} \)
\( (\text{assign}(d)(((target,source)),} \)
\( \text{assign-multiple(tl(duqn^*))(tl(type-descriptors))(tl(e^*)))) \)

\( \text{unbind-parameters(ref)(d)(actuals)(no-unbind?)(t)(p)(c)(v)(stk)} \)
\( = \text{let z = hd(p)} \)
\( \text{and q = %path(d)(idf(d))} \)
\( \text{and par-assoc-list = extract-pars(d)(t)} \) in
\( \text{let all-formals = get-qids(collect-allpars(par-assoc-list))(t)(q) in} \)
\( \text{let qual-all-formals = get-qualified-ids(all-formals)(v) in} \)
\( (\text{null(qual-all-formals)} \)
\( \rightarrow (\text{mk-sd}} \)
\( (z)(e)(c)(e) \)
\( (c(pop-universe(v)(all-formals))(stk-pop(stk))))), \)
\( (\text{no-unbind?)} \)
\( \rightarrow (\text{mk-sd}} \)
\( (z)(e)(c)(\text{cons(z,qual-all-formals))} \)
\( (\text{cons(mk-cover-already}((\text{dot}(z),\text{cons(pound}(z),\text{qual-all-formals)}))(t),} \)
\( \text{cons(mk-undeclare(qual-all-formals),} \)
\( \text{c(pop-universe(v)(all-formals))(stk-pop(stk))))), \)
\( \text{let expr1 = actuals in} \)
\( \text{MR \{ expr1 \} (t)(p)(h_1)(v)(stk) \)
where
\( h_1 = \lambda (e_1^*,f_1^*),v_1,stk_1. \)
\( \text{let to-actuals = collect-toargs(underef(e_1^*))(par-assoc-list) in} \)
\( \text{let qual-to-actuals = get-qualified-ids(to-actuals)(v_1) in} \)
\( (\text{null(qual-to-actuals)} \)
\( \rightarrow (\text{mk-sd}} \)
\( (z)(e)(c)(\text{cons(z,qual-all-formals))} \)
\( (\text{cons(mk-cover-already} \)
\( ((\text{dot}(z),\text{cons(pound}(z),\text{qual-all-formals)}))(t),} \)
\( \text{cons(mk-undeclare(qual-all-formals),} \)
\( \text{c(pop-universe(v_1)(all-formals))(stk-pop(stk_1)))))) \),
let from-formals = collect-frompars(par-assoc-list)(q) and 
type-descriptors = collect-toargs-types 
(actuals)(par-assoc-list)(t)(p) in

let expr_* = from-formals in
MR [ expr_* ] (t)(q)(v_1)(h_2)(v_2)(stk_1)

where
h_2 = λ(e_3^*,f_2^*),v_2,stk_2.

u_1(v_2)(stk_2)

where

u_1 = λv_3,stk_3.

let guard* = nconc
(collect-guards-for-exprs
(from-formals)
(type-descriptors)(t)
(q)(v_3)(stk_3),f_2^*)
in

(mk-sd
(z)(guard*)(ε)(qual-to-actuals)
(nconc
(assign-multiple
(qual-to-actuals)
(type-descriptors)(e_3^*)
u_2(v_3)(stk_3))))

where
u_2 = λv_4,stk_4.

(mk-sd
(z)(ε)(ε)
(cons(z,qual-all-formals))
(cons(mk-cover-already
((dot(z),
cons(pound(z),
qual-all-formals)))(t),
cons(mk-undeclare
(qual-all-formals),
c(pop-universe
(v_4)
(all-formals))
(stk-pop(stk_4))))))))

underef(actuals)
= (null(actuals)→ ε,
let actual = hd(actuals) in
(dotted.Expr.p(actual)→ cons(second(actual),underef(tl(actuals)))),
cons(actual,underef(tl(actuals))))))

mk-cover-already(id,lst)(t)
= (new-declarations()→ mk-rel(univint-type-desc(t))((EQ ,hd(lst),id)),
mk-cover(id,lst))
mk-undeclare(lst) = cons(UNDECLARE ,lst)

Procedure calls in Stage 3 VHDL use call by value-result semantics. The translation of a procedure call consists of the following steps:

- The actual parameters are translated and then gen-call pushes a subprogram return descriptor and then a (single) undeclaration descriptor for all of the formal parameters onto the execution stack.
• SDVS declarations of all of the formal parameters are emitted (in bind-parameters).

• The IN and INOUT formal parameters are bound to their corresponding actual parameters by first translating the actual parameters and then in effect assigning them to their corresponding formals by emitting appropriate equality relations (as in the translation of assignment). This is done by auxiliary semantic function bind-parameters. In these equality relations, the qualified names of the formal parameters must refer to the procedure's declaration TSE, whereas the qualified names in the actual parameters refer to the procedure's calling environment. This implements the semantics of static binding required by VHDL.

• The subprogram may have either a specific body or a set of state delta characterizations, but not both. Different actions are performed in each case.

1. If the procedure has a body, the procedure's local declarations and statements are translated in the procedure's declaration environment after first pushing a *SUBPROGRAM-RETURN* descriptor on the execution stack. This descriptor will be used to perform a return from the procedure, whether that return is explicit via a RETURN statement or implicit via encountering the end of the procedure's body.

2. If the procedure has one or more characterizations, state deltas representing the actions of the procedure are produced by the functions gen-characterizations and gen-characterization. These two functions use the SDVS functions fixed-characterized-sds and subst-vars, part of the implementation of an offline characterization mechanism for SDVS [3].

• Auxiliary semantic function unbind-parameters is invoked to assign the (final) values of the INOUT and OUT formal parameters to their corresponding actual parameters (which must, of course, have reference types).

(SS12) SS [[ RETURN atmark opt-exp ] (t)(p)(c)(v)(stk)
    = cons([EQ ,nounl(catenate(hd(p),"\pc")),atmark],
    let expr = opt-expr in
    R [[ expr ] (t)(p)(k)(v)(stk)
    where
    k = \(e,f)_{v,stk}.
    (null(e) \rightarrow (mk-sd(hd(p))(e)(e)(e)(return(v)(stk))))
    let d = context(t)(p) in
    let result-d = tdesc(extract-rtype(d)) in
    let precondition = nconc
    (mk-constraint-guards
    ((e))(result-d)(t)(p)
    (v)(stk),f) in
    (mk-sd
    (hd(p))(precondition)(e)
    ((qualified-id(qid(d)))(v))
    (nconc
    (assign(result-d)((qualified-id(qid(d))(v),e)),
    c1(v)(stk)
    where c1 = \(v,stk,return(v)(stk))))))

159
return(v)(stk)
  = let <tg,qname,p,g> = hd(stk) in
     (case tg
        *UNDECLARE* → g(λv.s.return(vv)(e))(v)(stk),
        (*BLOCK-EXIT*, *SUBPROGRAM-RETURN*) → g(v)(stk-pop(stk)),
        (*BEGIN*, *LOOP-EXIT*, *PACKAGE-BODY-EXIT*) → return(v)(stk-pop(stk)),
        OTHERWISE
           → impl-error("Bad execution stack descriptor tag in context: "a",tg))

context(t)(path)
  = let d = t(path)(*UNIT*) in
     (d = *UNBOUND* → context(t)(rest(path)),
      case tag(d)
         (*PROCEDURE*, *FUNCTION*, *PACKAGE*) → t(rest(path))(last(path)),
         OTHERWISE → context(t)(rest(path))))

extract-rtype(d)
  = let signature = hd(signatures(d)) in
    rtype(signature)

RETURN statements come in two varieties: with an expression, to effect a return from a function, and without an expression, to effect a return from a procedure. If the RETURN is from a function, then the expression must first be translated and an assignment of its value to the function's (statically and dynamically uniquely qualified) name must be asserted via an equality relation. Then (no matter whether the RETURN is from a procedure or a function), the function return (similar to exit) is invoked to use the topmost *SUBPROGRAM-RETURN* descriptor on the execution stack to return from the subprogram, after first effecting exits from intervening loops and effecting necessary undeclarations. The function context determines the qualified name of the subprogram from which the return is being made.

(SS13) SS [[ WAIT atmark ref* opt-expr1 opt-expr2 ]] (t)(p)(c)(v)(stk)
  = cons((EQ, pound(catenate(hd(p),"\pc")), atmark),
     let c1 = λv,stk.
       (mk-sd
        (hd(p))(c)(e)(e)
        ((make-vhdl-try-resume-next-process(hd(p))(v)(stk))))) in

ME [[ ref* ]] (t)(p)(h)(v)(stk)

where
h = λ(e*,f*),v,stk3.

let expr1 = opt-expr1 in
R [[ expr1 ]] (t)(p)(k1)(v)(stk)
where
k1 = λ(e1,f1),v,stk.

let expr2 = opt-expr2 in
R [[ expr2 ]] (t)(p)(k2)(v)(stk)
where
k2 = λ(e2,f2),v,stk.

let process-id = last(find-process-env
    (t)(p)) in

     (mk-sd
      (hd(p))(nconc(f1,f2,f*))(e)(e)
      ((make-vhdl-process-suspend
        (process-id)(get-signals(e*))
        (e1)(e2)(c)(c1(v)(stk))))))

160
find-process-env(t)(p)
= (null(p)\ V \tag(t)("UNIT***))\ = \ *PROCESS\ * \rightarrow \ p, \ find-process-env(t)(rest(p)))

get-signals(signal-names)
= (null(signal-names) \rightarrow \ v, 
\ cons(find-signal-structure(hd(signal-names)), get-signals(tl(signal-names))))

8.4.7 Waveforms and Transactions

(W1) \ W \ [ \ WAVE \ transaction^+ ] \ (t)(p)(wave-cont)(v)(stk)
= TRM \ [ \ transaction^+ ] \ (t)(p)(wave-cont)(v)(stk)

(TRM0) TRM \ [ \ v \ ] \ (t)(p)(wave-cont)(v)(stk) = wave-cont((v,v))(v)(stk)

(TRM1) TRM \ [ \ transaction \ transaction^* ] \ (t)(p)(wave-cont)(v)(stk)
= TR \ [ \ transaction ] \ (t)(p)(trans-cont)(v)(stk)
where
trans-cont = λ(trans,guard),v,stk.
TRM \ [ \ transaction^* ] \ (t)(p)(wave-cont)(v)(stk)
where
wave-cont = λ(trans',guard^*),v,stk.
wave-cont
(((cons(trans,trans'),
  nconc(guard,guard^*))))(v)(stk)

The transactions in a waveform are translated in order, from left to right.

(TR1) TR \ [ \ TRANS \ expr \ opt-exp \ ] \ (t)(p)(trans-cont)(v)(stk)
= R \ [ \ expr \ ] \ (t)(p)(k)(v)(stk)
where
k = λ(e1,f1),v,stk.
let \ expr2 = opt-exp \ in 
R \ [ \ expr2 \ ] \ (t)(p)(k1)(v)(stk)
where
k1 = λ(e2,f2),v,stk.
trans-cont
((mk-transaction-for-update(e1)(e2),nconc(f1,f2)))
(v)(stk)

mk-transaction-for-update(transaction-value)(delay-time)
= let \ transaction-time = (null(delay-time) \rightarrow \ mk-add-delay-time(0)[1],
mk-add-delay-time(delay-time)(0)) \ in 
mk-transaction(transaction-time)(transaction-value)

mk-add-delay-time(global)(delta)
= (TIMEPLUS ,dot(VHDLTIME ),mk-vhdltime(global)(delta))

mk-vhdltime(global)(delta) = (VHDLTIME ,global,delta)
8.4.8 Expressions

Two semantic functions, \( E \) and \( R \), translate expressions. \( E \) obtains the (qualified) place name corresponding to a scalar or array. \( R \) yields an expression that represents a value rather than a reference.

\[
\begin{align*}
& (ME0) \quad ME \left[ \varepsilon \right](t)(p)(h)(v)(stk) = h((\varepsilon,e))(v)(stk) \\
& (ME1) \quad ME \left[ \text{ref ref*} \right](t)(p)(h)(v)(stk) \\
& \quad = E \left[ \text{ref} \right](t)(p)(k)(v)(stk) \\
& \quad \quad \text{where} \\
& \quad \quad k = \lambda(e,f),v_1,stk_1, \\
& \quad \quad \quad ME \left[ \text{ref*} \right](t)(p)(h_1)(v_1)(stk_1) \\
& \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{where} h_1 = \lambda(e^*,f^*),v_2,stk_2,h((\text{cons}(e,e^*),\text{nconc}(f,f^*))(v_2))(stk_2) \\
& (MR0) \quad MR \left[ \varepsilon \right](t)(p)(h)(v)(stk) = h((\varepsilon,e))(v)(stk) \\
& (MR1) \quad MR \left[ \text{expr expr*} \right](t)(p)(h)(v)(stk) \\
& \quad = R \left[ \text{expr} \right](t)(p)(k)(v)(stk) \\
& \quad \quad \text{where} \\
& \quad \quad k = \lambda(e,f),v_1,stk_1, \\
& \quad \quad \quad MR \left[ \text{expr*} \right](t)(p)(h_1)(v_1)(stk_1) \\
& \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{where} h_1 = \lambda(e^*,f^*),v_2,stk_2,h((\text{cons}(e,e^*),\text{nconc}(f,f^*))(v_2))(stk_2)
\end{align*}
\]

The translation of a (possibly empty) multiple expression list yields a list of translated expressions and a corresponding list of guard formulas.

\[
\begin{align*}
& (E1) \quad E \left[ \text{REF modifier*} \right](t)(p)(k)(v)(stk) \\
& \quad = \text{let basic-ref = modifier* in} \\
& \quad \quad \text{let (basic-name,d) = gen-basic-name(basic-ref)(t)(v) in} \\
& \quad \quad \quad \text{gen-name(ref)(basic-name)(\varepsilon)(d)(tl(basic-ref))(t)(p)(k)(v)(stk)} \\
& \quad \quad \text{gen-basic-name(basic-ref)(t)(v)} \\
& \quad \quad \quad = \text{let (tg,q,id) = hf(basic-ref) in} \\
& \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{let d = t(q)(id) in} \\
& \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{(case tag(d)} \\
& \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{(*PROCEDURE*, *FUNCTION*) } \rightarrow \text{(qualified-id}(\text{qid}(d))(v),d), \\
& \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{OTHERWISE } \rightarrow \text{(qualified-id}(\text{qid}(d))(v),\text{desc}(\text{type}(d)))}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
& \text{gen-name(ref)(e)(f)(d)(ref-tail)(t)(p)(k)(v)(stk)} \\
& \quad = (\text{null}(\text{ref-tail}) \rightarrow \text{k}((\text{c.f})(v))(stk), \\
& \quad \quad \text{let modifier = hf(ref-tail) in} \\
& \quad \quad \text{let (tg,isp) = modifier in} \\
& \quad \quad \quad \text{(case tg} \\
& \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{INDEX } \rightarrow \text{gen-array-ref(isp)(e)(f)(d)(t)(p)(c)(v)(stk)}, \\
& \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{SELECTOR } \rightarrow \text{gen-record-ref(isp)(e)(f)(d)(c)(v)(stk)}, \\
& \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{PARLIST } \rightarrow \text{gen-function-call(isp)(d)(t)(p)(c)(v)(stk)}, \\
& \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{OTHERWISE} \\
& \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{impl-error("Unrecognized Stage 3 VHDL reference modifier tag: -a",tg))}
\end{align*}
\]

where
\[
c = \lambda(e_1,f_1,d_1),v,stk. \\
\text{gen-name(ref)(e_1)(f_1)(d_1)(tl(ref-tail))(t)(p)(k)(v)(stk))
\]

162
= \text{R} [简称] \text{expr} ] (t)(p)(k)(v)(stk)  
where  
k = \lambda(e_0,f_0),v,stk.  
c((\text{ELEMENT},e,e_0),  
nconc  
(f,f_0,  
(null(ub(d)))  
\rightarrow (\text{mk-rel}(\text{univint-type-desc}(t))((\text{GE},e_0,(\text{ORIGIN},e))),  
(\text{mk-rel}(\text{univint-type-desc}(t))((\text{GE},e_0,(\text{ORIGIN},e))),  
\text{mk-rel}  
(\text{univint-type-desc}(t))  
((\text{LE},e_0,  
\text{mk-exp2}(\text{SUB},\text{mk-exp2}(\text{ADD},(\text{ORIGIN},e),(\text{RANGE},e)),1))))),  
elty(d))))(v)(stk)  
gen-record-ref(id)(e)(f)(d)(c)(v)(stk)  
= c((\text{mk-recelt}(e,id),f,\text{lookup-record-desc}(\text{components}(d))(id)))(v)(stk)  
mk-recelt(e)(id) = (\text{RECORD},e,id)  
lookup-record-desc(comp\star)(id)  
= (null(comp\star) \rightarrow \ast\text{UNBOUND}\ast,  
let (x,d) = \text{hd}(\text{comp}\star) \text{ in}  
(x = id \rightarrow d, \text{lookup-record-desc}(\text{tl}(\text{comp}\star))(id)))  
gen-function-call(ref)(expr\star)(d)(t)(p)(c)(v)(stk)  
= \text{declare-function-name}(d)(t)(p)(u)(v)(stk)  
where  
u = \lambda v,stk.  
gen-call(ref)(d)(expr\star)(tt)(tt)(t)(p)(c_1)(v)(stk)  
where  
c_1 = \lambda v,stk.  
c((\text{qualified-id}(\text{qid}(d)))(v),e,\text{tdesc}(\text{extract-rtype}(d)))(v)(stk)  
declare-function-name(d)(t)(p)(u)(v)(stk)  
= let q = \text{path}(d)  
and dd = \text{tdesc}(\text{extract-rtype}(d)) \text{ in}  
let z = \text{hd}(q) \text{ in}  
let suqn\ast = \text{get-qids}(\text{idf}(d))(t)(q) \text{ in}  
let v_1 = \text{push-universe}(v)(z)(\text{suqn\ast}) \text{ in}  
let duqn\ast = \text{get-qualified-ids}(\text{suqn\ast})(v_1) \text{ in}  
let dc-desc = \langle\ast\text{UNDECLARE}\ast,\text{idf}(d),q,  
\lambda u_1,v_2,stk_2.  
declare-function-name  
(\text{suqn\ast})(\text{duqn\ast})(z)(t)(u_1)(v_2)(stk_2) > \text{ in}  
\text{mk-decl-sd}  
(z)(c)(c)(z))  
\text{ncconc}  
(\text{mk-qual-id-coverings}(\text{suqn\ast})(\text{duqn\ast})(z)(v)(t),  
\text{mk-scalar-nonsignal-dec-post}  
(e)(\text{duqn\ast},e,dd))(t)(q)(u)(v_1)(stk\text{-push}(dc-desc)(stk)))  
declare-function-name(\text{suqn\ast})(\text{duqn\ast})(z)(t)(u)(v)(stk)  
= (\text{mk-sd}  
(z)(e)(\text{cons}(z,\text{duqn\ast}))  
(\text{cons}(\text{mk-cover-already}((\text{dot}(z),\text{cons}(\text{pound}(z),\text{duqn\ast}))))(t),  
\text{cons}(\text{mk-undeclare}(\text{duqn\ast}),  
\text{u}(\text{pop-universe}(v)(\text{suqn\ast}))(\text{stk-pop}(stk))))))  
163
A reference must begin with at least a basic reference, which contains its root identifier and access path. Following its basic reference, a reference has zero or more array index, record field selection, or actual parameter list modifiers. The reference itself is translated by gen-name; the basic reference is translated by gen-basic-name. The array index and record field selection modifiers are translated by gen-array-ref and gen-record-ref. The translation of a reference is complicated by the appearance of a parameter list modifier, which represents a function call; these are translated by gen-function-call.

Whenever a function is called (as part of an expression), the name of that function is used in the expression to name the value returned by that particular invocation. Because the same function can be invoked more than once in the same expression, each corresponding instance of the function’s name must be uniquely dynamically qualified, and each of those DUQNs must be declared (and later undeclared when they should no longer exist) to SDVS. The declaration is performed by function declare-function-name and the undeclaration by undeclare-function-name; the invocation of the latter function is encapsulated in an undeclaration (*UNDECLARE*) descriptor pushed onto the execution stack. After a new dynamic instance of the function’s name is declared, gen-function-call evaluates the actual parameters and then invokes gen-call to finish the translation of this function call.

(R0) $ \text{R} [e] (t)(p)(k)(v)(stk) = k((e,e))(v)(stk)$

For technical convenience, expressions can be empty; the translation of an empty expression yields empty results.

(R1) $ \text{R} [\text{FALSE}] (t)(p)(k)(v)(stk) = k((\text{FALSE},e))(v)(stk)$

(R2) $ \text{R} [\text{TRUE}] (t)(p)(k)(v)(stk) = k((\text{TRUE},e))(v)(stk)$

(R3) $ \text{R} [\text{BIT} \text{ bitlit}] (t)(p)(k)(v)(stk) = k((\text{R}[\text{bitlit},e]))(v)(stk)$

(R4) $ \text{R} [\text{NUM} \text{ constant}] (t)(p)(k)(v)(stk) = k((\text{N}[\text{constant},e]))(v)(stk)$

(R5) $ \text{R} [\text{TIME} \text{ constant} \text{ FS}] (t)(p)(k)(v)(stk) = k((\text{N}[\text{constant},e]))(v)(stk)$

(R6) $ \text{R} [\text{CHAR} \text{ constant}] (t)(p)(k)(v)(stk) = k((\text{expr},e))(v)(stk)$

(R7) $ \text{R} [\text{ENUMLIT} \text{ id}] (t)(p)(k)(v)(stk) = k((\text{id},e))(v)(stk)$

(R8) $ \text{R} [\text{BITSTR} \text{ bit-li*}] (t)(p)(k)(v)(stk) = \text{let} \text{ expr* = bit-li* in MR}[\text{expr*}](t)(p)(k)(v)(stk)$
(R9) $\text{R} [[\text{STR char-lit* }] (t)(p)(k)(v)(\text{stk})$
\hspace{1cm} = \text{let } \text{expr*} = \text{char-lit*} \text{ in}$
\hspace{1cm} $\text{MR} [[\text{expr* }] (t)(p)(k)(v)(\text{stk})$

(R10) $\text{R} [[\text{REF modifier* }] (t)(p)(k)(v)(\text{stk})$
\hspace{1cm} = \text{let } \text{ref} = \text{expr} \text{ in}$
\hspace{1cm} $\begin{array}{l}
\text{E} [[\text{ref }] (t)(p)(k_1)(v)(\text{stk}) \\
\text{where } k_1 = \lambda(e,f,v_1,\text{stk}_1,k((\text{dot}(e,f))(v))(\text{v}_1))(\text{stk}_1) \end{array}$

Scalar and array references are first $\text{E}$-translated, yielding an expression and a guard formula. The corresponding $\text{R}$-translation is obtained by applying the $\text{dot}$ operation to the translated expression.

(R11) $\text{R} [[\text{PAGGR expr* }] (t)(p)(k)(v)(\text{stk}) = \text{MR} [[\text{expr* }] (t)(p)(k)(v)(\text{stk})$

(R12) $\text{R} [[\text{TYPECONV expr type-mark }] (t)(p)(k)(v)(\text{stk})$
\hspace{1cm} = \text{let } d = \text{lookup-desc(type-mark)}(t)(p) \text{ in}$
\hspace{1cm} $\begin{array}{l}
\text{R} [[\text{expr }] (t)(p)(k_1)(v)(\text{stk}) \\
\text{where } \begin{array}{l}
k_1 = \lambda(e,f,v_1,\text{stk}_1, k((\text{mk-constraint-guard}))(\text{v})(\text{stk}_1)) \\
\text{let } \text{constraint-guard} = \text{mk-constraint-guards} \\
((e))(d))(t)(p)(v)(\text{stk}_1) \text{ in} \\
(\text{null}(\text{constraint-guard}) \to k((e,f))(v)(\text{stk}_1),) \\
(\text{mk-sd}((\text{hd}(p))(\text{constraint-guard}))(e))(e)((k((e,f))(v)(\text{stk}_1)))) \end{array} \end{array}$

(R13) $\text{R} [[\text{unary-op expr }] (t)(p)(k)(v)(\text{stk})$
\hspace{1cm} = $\text{R} [[\text{expr }] (t)(p)(k_1)(v)(\text{stk})$
\hspace{1cm} $\text{where } k_1 = \lambda(e,f,v_1,\text{stk}_1, k((\text{mk-exp1}(\text{unary-op},e)))v_1(stk))$

mk-exp1(unary-op,e)
\hspace{1cm} = \text{(case } \text{unary-op} \text{)}$
\hspace{1cm} \begin{array}{l}
\text{NOT} \to (\text{NOT }e), \\\n\text{BNOT} \to (\text{USNOT }e), \\\n\text{PLUS} \to e, \\\n\text{NEG} \to (\text{MINUS }e), \\\n\text{ABS} \to (\text{ABS }e), \\\n(\text{RNEG }\text{RABS }) \to (\text{unary-op},e), \\\n\text{OTHERWISE} \to \text{impl-error("Unrecognized Stage 3 VHDL unary operator: "},\text{unary-op}) \end{array}$

(R14) $\text{R} [[\text{binary-op expr1 expr2 }] (t)(p)(k)(v)(\text{stk})$
\hspace{1cm} = $\text{R} [[\text{expr1 }] (t)(p)(k_1)(v)(\text{stk})$
\hspace{1cm} $\text{where } k_1 = \lambda(e_1,f_1,v_1,\text{stk}_1)$
\hspace{1cm} $\text{R} [[\text{expr2 }] (t)(p)(k_2)(v_1)(\text{stk}_1)$
\hspace{1cm} $\text{where } k_2 = \lambda(e_2,f_2,v_2,\text{stk}_2)$
\hspace{1cm} $k((\text{mk-exp2}(\text{binary-op},e_1,e_2),\text{nconc}(f_1,f_2)))(v_2)(\text{stk}_2)$
\[ (R15) \ R [ \text{relational-op \ expr}_1 \ \text{expr}_2 ] (t)(p)(k)(v)(\text{stk}) \\
= R [ \text{expr}_1 ] (t)(p)(k_1)(v)(\text{stk}) \\
\text{where} \\
k_1 = \lambda(e_1, f_1, v_1, \text{stk}_1). \\
\ R [ \text{expr}_2 ] (t)(p)(k_2)(v_1)(\text{stk}_1) \\
\text{where} \\
k_2 = \lambda(e_2, f_2, v_2, \text{stk}_2). \\
\text{let} \ d = T [ \text{expr}_1 ] (t)(p) \ \text{in} \\
k((\text{mk-rel}(d)((\text{relational-op}, e_1, e_2)), \text{nconc}(f_1, f_2))) \\
(v_2)(\text{stk}_2) \]

### 8.4.9 Expression Types

The function `mk-rel` (described earlier) requires a type descriptor as its first argument; application of the semantic function `T` determines the type descriptor of an expression as follows:

- if the expression is a constant, its type descriptor is the basic type of that constant;
- if the expression is a reference, its type descriptor is the basic type of that reference, obtained by the function `get-type-desc`; and
- if the expression contains operators, its type descriptor is the basic result type of its top-level operator (if there is one);

\[ (T0) \ T [ \epsilon ] (t)(p) = \text{void-type-desc}(t) \]
\[ (T1) \ T [ \text{FALSE} ] (t)(p) = \text{bool-type-desc}(t) \]
\[ (T2) \ T [ \text{TRUE} ] (t)(p) = \text{bool-type-desc}(t) \]
\[ (T3) \ T [ \text{BIT} \ \text{bitlit} ] (t)(p) = \text{bit-type-desc}(t) \]
\[ (T4) \ T [ \text{NUM \ constant} ] (t)(p) = \text{univint-type-desc}(t) \]
\[ (T5) \ T [ \text{TIME \ constant \ FS} ] (t)(p) = \text{time-type-desc}(t) \]
\[ (T6) \ T [ \text{CHAR \ constant} ] (t)(p) = \text{char-type-desc}(t) \]
\[ (T7) \ T [ \text{ENUMLIST} \ id ] (t)(p) \\
= \text{let} \ d = \text{lookup-desc-on-path}(t)(p)[\text{id}] \ \text{in} \\
\text{tdesc}(\text{type}(d)) \]
\[ (T8) \ T [ \text{BITSTR} \ \text{bit-lit}^* ] (t)(p) = \text{bitvector-type-desc}(t) \]
\[ (T9) \ T [ \text{STR} \ \text{char-lit}^* ] (t)(p) = \text{string-type-desc}(t) \]
\[ (T10) \ T [ \text{REF} \ \text{modifier}^* ] (t)(p) \]
\[ = \text{let} \ \text{basic-ref} = \text{modifier}^* \ \text{in} \\
\text{get-type-desc}(\text{basic-ref})(t)(p) \]
get-type-desc(basic-ref)(t)(p)
= let (tg,q,id) = hd(basic-ref) in
  let d = t(q)(id) in
  (case tag(d)
    (*PROCEDURE*,*FUNCTION*,*PROCESS*)
      → process-ref-tail(d)(tl(basic-ref))(t)(p),
    OTHERWISE → process-ref-tail(tdesc(type(d)))(tl(basic-ref))(t)(p))

process-ref-tail(d)(ref-tail)(t)(p)
= (null(ref-tail) → d,
   let modifier = hd(ref-tail) in
   (case hd(modifier)
     INDEX → process-ref-tail(elt(y(d)))(tl(ref-tail))(t)(p),
     SELECTOR → process-ref-tail
                   (lookup-record-desc(components(d))(second(modifier)))(tl(ref-tail))(t)(p),
     PARLIST → process-ref-tail(tdesc(extract-rtyp(e(d))))(tl(ref-tail))(t)(p),
     OTHERWISE → impl-error
                   ("Unrecognized Stage 3 VHDL reference modifier tag: "a",
                    hd(modifier)))))

(T11) T [ ] PAGGR expr* ] (t)(p) = void-type-desc(t)

(T12) T [ ] TYPECONV expr type-mark ] (t)(p) = lookup-desc(type-mark)(t)(p)

(T13) T [ ] unary-op expr ] (t)(p) = tdesc(restype1(unary-op)(t))

restype1(unary-op)(t)
= (case unary-op
    NOT → (VAL ,bool-type-desc(t)),
    BNOT → (VAL ,bit-type-desc(t)),
    (PLUS ,NEG ,ABS ) → (VAL ,univint-type-desc(t)),
    (RNEG ,RABS ) → (VAL ,real-type-desc(t)),
    OTHERWISE → impl-error("Unrecognized Stage 3 VHDL unary operator: "a",unary-op))

(T14) T [ ] binary-op expr1 expr2 ] (t)(p)
= tdesc(restype2(binary-op)((expr1,expr2))(t)(p))

restype2(binary-op)(expr1,expr2)(t)(p)
= (case binary-op
    (AND ,NAND ,OR ,NOR ,XOR ) → mk-type((DUMMY VAL ))(bool-type-desc(t)),
    (BAND ,BNAND ,BOR ,BNOR ,BXOR ) → mk-type((DUMMY VAL ))(bit-type-desc(t)),
    (ADD ,SUB ,MUL ,DIV ,MOD ,REM ,EXP ) → mk-type((DUMMY VAL ))(univint-type-desc(t)),
    (RPLUS ,RMINUS ,RTIMES ,RDIV ,REXPT ) → mk-type((DUMMY VAL ))(real-type-desc(t)),
    CONCAT → let d1 = T [ ] expr1 ] (t)(p)
               and d2 = T [ ] expr2 ] (t)(p) in
               mk-type((DUMMY VAL ))(mk-concat-tdesc(d1)(d2))(t),
    OTHERWISE → impl-error("Unrecognized Stage 3 VHDL binary operator: "a",binary-op))
\textbf{mk-concat-tdesc}(\texttt{d}_1)(\texttt{d}_2)(t) \\
= (\texttt{is-bit-tdesc}(\texttt{d}_1) \lor \texttt{is-bitvector-tdesc}(\texttt{d}_1)) \\
\rightarrow \texttt{array-type-desc} \\
\quad (\texttt{new-array-type-name(\texttt{BIT VECTOR }))(\texttt{e})(\texttt{tt})(\texttt{direction}(\texttt{d}_1))(\texttt{lb}(\texttt{d}_1)))(\texttt{e}) \\
\quad (\texttt{bit-type-desc}(t)), \\
\quad \texttt{let idf}_{1} = \texttt{idf}(\texttt{d}_1) \texttt{ in} \\
\quad \texttt{array-type-desc} \\
\quad (\texttt{new-array-type-name(\texttt{consp}(\texttt{idf}_{1}) \rightarrow \texttt{hd}(\texttt{idf}_{1}, \texttt{idf}_{1}))(\texttt{e})(\texttt{tt})} \\
\quad (\texttt{direction}(\texttt{d}_1))(\texttt{lb}(\texttt{d}_1)))(\texttt{e})(\texttt{eltv}(\texttt{d}_1))) \\

(T15) \texttt{T} \downarrow \texttt{relational-op} \texttt{expr}_1 \texttt{expr}_2 \downarrow (t)(p) = \texttt{bool-type-desc}(t) \\

\textbf{8.4.10 Primitive Semantic Equations} \\

The following semantic functions are primitive. \\

(N1) \texttt{\textbf{N} \downarrow \texttt{constant} \downarrow = \texttt{constant}} \\

(B1) \texttt{\textbf{B} \downarrow \texttt{bitlit} \downarrow = \texttt{mk-bit-simp-symbol(bitlit)}} \\

\texttt{mk-bit-simp-symbol(bitlit)} \\
\quad = (\texttt{case bitlit} \\
\quad \quad 0 \rightarrow (\texttt{BS 0 1}), \\
\quad \quad 1 \rightarrow (\texttt{BS 1 1}), \\
\quad \quad \texttt{OTHERWISE} \rightarrow \texttt{impl-error("Can't construct simp symbol for bit: "}, bitlit))
9 Conclusion

A precise and well-documented formal specification of the Stage 3 VHDL translator has been presented in this report. We have completed and exercised a Common Lisp implementation of both translation phases described herein.

Stage 3 VHDL represents a robust behavioral subset of the VHSIC Hardware Description Language, encompassing the following VHDL language features: (restricted) design files, entity declarations, architecture bodies, ports, declarative parts in entity declarations, package STANDARD (containing predefined types BOOLEAN, BIT, UNIVERSAL_INTEGER, INTEGER, TIME, CHARACTER, REAL, STRING, and BIT_VECTOR), user-defined packages, USE clauses, array type declarations, certain predefined attributes, enumeration types, subtypes of scalar types, integer type definitions, type conversions, PROCESS statements, concurrent signal assignment statements, subprograms (procedures and functions), IF and CASE statements, WHILE and FOR loops, octal and hexadecimal representations of bitstrings, and general expressions of type TIME in AFTER clauses.

As the SDVS interface to VHDL continues to expand and mature, our confidence grows in our language translator semantic specification and implementation paradigm. In 1994, we will be applying this paradigm to implement a translator for the Stage 4 VHDL language subset. Stage 4 VHDL is expected to include constructs that are needed to verify a VHDL application planned for fiscal year 1994, including structural descriptions (e.g. component declarations, component instantiation statements, and configuration declarations), as well as an implementation of a symbolic VHDL hardware clock.
References


Index

access 74, 124
already-qualified-id 125
ar1 123
argtypes1 88
argtypes1-error 89
argtypes2 90
argtypes2-error 90
array-signal-assignment 145
array-size 59
array-type 87
array-type-desc 43
art1 54
arx1 95
assign 127, 143
assign-array-downto 128
assign-array-to 128
assign-multiple 157
assign-record 128
assign-record-aux 128
assign-record-fields 128
at0 83
at1 83
at2 83
at3 83
attributes 71
attributes-low-high 63, 139
ax0 99
ax1 99
ax2 99
ax3 99
b1 168
b1 92
base-type 45
bind-parameters 155
bit-type-desc 41
bits-op 103
bitvector-type-desc 42
block-exit 121
body 45
bool-type-desc 41
cascade-array-signal-assignment 145
case-coverage 78
case-overlap 83
case-type-ok 78
case-union 84
char-type-desc 42
characterizations 45
check-array-aggregate 62
check-enum-lits 63
check-exprs 62
check-if 77
check-pkg-names 68
check-wait-ref 83
check-wait-refs 82
chk-array-type 87
collect-allpars 155
collect-expressions-from-conditional-waveforms 74
collect-expressions-from-selected-waveforms 73
collect-fids 66
collect-formal-pars 66
collect-fromargs 156
collect-frompars 156
collect-guards-for-exprs 156
collect-signals-from-expr 73
collect-signals-from-expr-list 73
collect-toargs 156
collect-toargs-types 156
collect-topars 156
collect-topars-types 156
collect-transaction-expressions 73
compatible-par-types 58
compatible-signatures 58
components 46
concatenate-bits 133
concatenate-characters 133
construct-case-alternatives 74
construct-cond-parts 75
context 82, 160
cs0 141
cs1 141
cs2 142
cst0 72
cst1 72
cst2 72
value 45
vhdlttime-type-desc 117
void-type-desc 42
w1 161
waveform-type-desc 130, 145
wt1 85
wx1 100

subst-vars 115
t0 166
t1 166
t10 166
t11 167
t12 167
t13 167
t14 167
t15 168
t2 166
t3 166
t4 166
t5 166
t6 166
t7 166
t8 166
t9 166
tag 45
tdesc 46
third 14
time-type-desc 42
tmode 46
trl 161
transform-if 98
transform-list 102
transform-name 101
transform-name-aux 102
trm0 161
trm1 161
trtl 86
trt2 86
trx1 100
trx2 100
type 45
type-tick-high 45
type-tick-low 45
ub 45
unbind-parameters 158
undeclare-function-name 164
underef 158
universe-counter 110
universe-name 110
universe-stack 110
universe-vars 110
univint-type-desc 41
validate-access 57

179